ENGLISH

Canon

DIGITAL

IXUS 750

Before Using the Camera

Shooting

Playback/Erasing

Print/Transfer Settings

Viewing Images on a TV set

Customizing the Camera

Troubleshooting

List of Messages

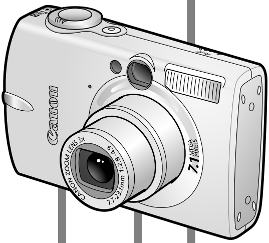
Appendix

Advanced

Camera User Guide

This guide explains camera features and procedures in detail.

Main Features



Shooting

- Automatically adjusts shooting settings to match particular conditions (Special Scene mode)
- Automatically detects camera orientation with an Intelligent Orientation sensor
- Changes image colors to create special effects (My Colors modes)

Playback

- Plays movies with sound
- Auto plays slideshows

Editing

- Records sound memos for still images
- Edits movies

Printing

- Makes printing easy with the Print/Share button
- Also supports non-Canon brand *PictBridge* compliant printers

Uses of Recorded Images

- Effortlessly transfer them to a computer with the Print/Share button
- Freely customize the start-up image or start-up sound using the My Camera settings

Conventions Used in this Guide

Icons appearing below titles indicate the modes in which the procedure can be used.

⏲ Using the Self-Timer

Shooting Mode 📷 📷M SCN 🎥 CM

See *Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode* (*p.123*)

In this guide, the *Basic Camera User Guide* is referred to as the *Basic Guide*, and the *Advanced Camera User Guide* is referred to as the *Advanced Guide*.

❗ This mark denotes issues that may affect the camera’s operation.

📝 This mark denotes additional topics that complement the basic operating procedures.

You can use SD* memory cards and MultiMediaCards with this camera. These cards are collectively called memory cards in this guide.

* SD stands for Secure Digital, a copyright protection system.

Use of genuine Canon accessories is recommended.

This product is designed to achieve excellent performance when used with genuine Canon accessories. Canon shall not be liable for any damage to this product and/or accidents such as fire, etc., caused by the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories (e.g., a leakage and/or explosion of a battery pack). Please note that this warranty does not apply to repairs arising out of the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories, although you may request such repairs on a chargeable basis.

Table of Contents

Items marked with a ☆ are lists or charts that summarize camera functions or procedures.

Conventions Used in this Guide 1

Handling Precautions 5

Please Read 5
Safety Precautions 6
Preventing Malfunctions 11

Before Using the Camera—The Components Guide . . . 12

Before Using the Camera—Basic Operations 15

Using the LCD Monitor 15
LCD Monitor Brightness 17
Information Displayed on the LCD Monitor 18
Using the Viewfinder 21
Indicators 22
Power Saving Function 22
Formatting Memory Cards 23
Setting the World Clock 24
☆ Menus and Settings 26
☆ Menu List 28
Resetting Settings to Their Default Values 31

Shooting 32

Changing the Resolution and Compression (Still Images) . . 32
Changing Resolutions and Frame Rates (Movies) 34
SCN Shooting in a Special Scene Mode 35
📷M Shooting in Manual Mode 35
Magnified Close-Up Shooting (Digital Macro) 36
Using the Digital Zoom 37
❏ Continuous Shooting 38
Postcard Date Imprint Mode 39
⏲ Using the Self-Timer 40
🎥 Movie Shooting 42
Shooting Panoramic Images (Stitch Assist) 44

Switching between Focusing Modes .46
Shooting Hard-to-Focus Subjects (Focus Lock, AF Lock) . . .47
Locking the Exposure Setting (AE Lock) 48
Locking the Flash Exposure Setting (FE Lock) 49
Switching between Metering Modes .50
Adjusting the Exposure Compensation 51
Shooting in Long Shutter Mode 52
Adjusting the Tone (White Balance) 54
Changing the Photo Effect 57
Shooting in a My Colors Mode 58
ISO Adjusting the ISO Speed 64
Setting the Auto Rotate Function 65
Creating an Image Destination (Folder) 66
Resetting the File Number 67

Playback/Erasing 69

🔍 Magnifying Images 69
▦ Viewing Images in Sets of Nine (Index Playback) 70
↶ Jumping to Images 71
Viewing Movies 72
Editing Movies 73
Rotating Images in the Display 75
Playback with Transition Effects 76
Attaching Sound Memos to Images 76
Automated Playback (Slide Shows) 78
Protecting Images 82
Erasing All Images 82

Print Settings/Transfer Settings 83

Setting the DPOF Print Settings 83
Setting the DPOF Transfer Settings .87

Viewing Images on a TV set 89

Customizing the Camera (My Camera Settings) 90

Changing My Camera Settings 90
Registering My Camera Settings 91

Troubleshooting 93

Camera 93
When the power is turned on 93
LCD monitor 94
Shooting 95
Shooting Movies 99
Playback 100
Battery/Battery Charger 101
TV monitor output 101

List of Messages 102

Appendix 105

Battery Handling 105
Handling the Memory Card 107
Using an AC Adapter Kit (Sold Separately) 109
Using an Externally Mounted Flash (Sold Separately) 110
Camera Care and Maintenance 112
Specifications 113

INDEX. 120

☆ **Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode 123**

Handling Precautions

Please Read

Test Shots

Before you try to photograph important subjects, we highly recommend that you shoot several trial images to confirm that the camera is operating and being operated correctly.

Please note that Canon Inc., its subsidiaries and affiliates, and its distributors are not liable for any consequential damages arising from any malfunction of a camera or accessory, including memory cards, that results in the failure of an image to be recorded or to be recorded in a way that is machine readable.

Warning Against Copyright Infringement

Please note that Canon digital cameras are intended for personal use and should never be used in a manner that infringes upon or contravenes international or domestic copyright laws and regulations. Please be advised that in certain cases the copying of images from performances, exhibitions, or commercial properties by means of a camera or other device may contravene copyright or other legal rights even if the image was shot for personal use.

Warranty Limitations

For information on your camera's warranty, please refer to the Canon European Warranty System (EWS) Booklet supplied with your camera.

For Canon Customer Support contacts, please see rear of the European Warranty System (EWS) Booklet.

Camera Body Temperature

If your camera is used for prolonged periods, the camera body may become warm. Please be aware of this and take care when operating the camera for an extended period.

About the LCD Monitor

The LCD monitor is produced with extremely high-precision manufacturing techniques. More than 99.99% of the pixels operate to specification. Less than 0.01% of the pixels may occasionally misfire or appear as red or black dots. This has no effect on the recorded image and does not constitute a malfunction.

Video Format

Please set the camera's video signal format to the one used in your region before using it with a TV monitor (p. 89).

Language Setting

Please see the *Basic Guide* (p. 4) to change the language setting.

Safety Precautions

- Before using the camera, please ensure that you read the safety precautions described below and in the "Safety Precautions" section of the *Basic Camera User Guide*. Always ensure that the camera is operated correctly.
- The safety precautions noted on the following pages are intended to instruct you in the safe and correct operation of the camera and its accessories to prevent injuries or damage to yourself, other persons and equipment.
- Equipment refers to the camera, battery charger or separately sold compact power adapter.
- Battery refers to the battery pack.

⚠ Warnings

Equipment

- **Do not aim the camera directly into the sun or at other intense light sources that could damage your eyesight.**

- **Store this equipment out of the reach of children and infants. Accidental damage by a child could result in serious injury.**
  - Wrist strap: Placement of the strap around the child's neck could result in asphyxiation.
  - Memory card: It may be swallowed accidentally. If this occurs, contact a doctor immediately.

- **Do not attempt to disassemble or alter any part of the equipment that is not expressly described in this guide.**
- **To avoid the risk of high-voltage electrical shock, do not touch the flash portion of the camera if it has been damaged.**
- **Stop operating the equipment immediately if it emits smoke or noxious fumes.**
- **Do not allow the equipment to come into contact with, or become immersed in, water or other liquids. If the exterior comes into contact with liquids or salt air, wipe it dry with a soft, absorbent cloth.**

Continued use of the equipment may result in fire or electrical shock. Immediately turn the camera power off and remove the camera battery or unplug the power cord from the power outlet. Please consult your camera distributor or the closest Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

- **Do not use substances containing alcohol, benzine, thinners or other flammable substances to clean or maintain the equipment.**
- **Do not cut, damage, alter or place heavy items on the power cord.**
- **Use only recommended power accessories.**
- **Remove the power cord on a regular periodic basis and wipe away the dust and dirt that collects on the plug, the exterior of the power outlet and the surrounding area.**
- **Do not handle the power cord if your hands are wet.**

Continued use of the equipment may result in fire or electrical shock.

Battery

- **Do not place the battery near a heat source or expose it to direct flame or heat.**
- **The battery should not be immersed in water or sea water.**
- **Do not attempt to disassemble, alter or apply heat to the battery.**
- **Avoid dropping or subjecting the battery to severe impacts that could damage the casing.**
- **Use only recommended battery and accessories.**

Use of battery not expressly recommended for this equipment may cause explosions or leaks, resulting in fire, injury and damage to the surroundings. In the event that a battery leaks and the eyes, mouth, skin or clothing contact these substances, immediately flush with water and seek medical assistance.

- **Disconnect the battery charger and compact power adapter from both the camera and the power outlet after recharging or when they are not in use to avoid fire and other hazards.**
- **Do not place anything, such as tablecloths, carpets, bedding or cushions, on top of the battery charger while it is charging.**

Continued use over a long period may cause the units to overheat and distort, resulting in fire.

- **Use only the specified battery charger to charge the battery.**
- **The battery charger and compact power adapter are designed for exclusive use with your camera. Do not use it with other products or batteries.**

There is a risk of overheating and distortion which could result in fire or electrical shock.

- **Before you discard a battery, cover the terminals with tape or other insulators to prevent direct contact with other objects.**

Contact with the metallic components of other materials in waste containers may lead to fire or explosions.

Others

- **Do not trigger the flash in close proximity to human or animal eyes. Exposure to the intense light produced by the flash may damage eyesight.**

In particular, remain at least one meter (39 inches) away from infants when using the flash.

- **Keep objects that are sensitive to magnetic fields (such as credit cards) away from the speaker of the camera.**

Such items may lose data or stop working.

⚠ Cautions

Equipment

- **Be careful not to bang the camera or subject it to strong impacts or shocks that could lead to injury or damage the equipment when wearing or holding it by the strap.**

- **Do not store the equipment in humid or dusty areas.**
- **Do not allow metal objects (such as pins or keys) or dirt to contact the charger terminals or plug.**

Such conditions could lead to fire, electrical shock or other damage.

- **Avoid using, placing or storing the equipment in places subject to strong sunlight or high temperatures, such as the dashboard or trunk (boot) of a car.**
- **Ensure that the battery charger is plugged into a power outlet of the specified rating, not over the specified rating. Do not use if the power cord or plug are damaged, or if not fully plugged into the outlet.**
- **Do not use in locations with poor ventilation.**

The above-mentioned can cause leakage, overheating or explosion, resulting in fire, burns or other injuries. High temperatures may also cause deformation of the casing.

- **When not using the camera for extended periods of time, remove the battery from the camera or battery charger and store the equipment in a safe place.**

The battery can run down.

Flash

- **Do not operate the flash with dirt, dust or other items stuck to the surface of the flash.**
- **Be careful not to cover the flash with your fingers or clothing when shooting.**

The flash may be damaged and emit smoke or noise. The resulting heat build-up could damage the flash.

- **Do not touch the surface of the flash after taking several pictures in rapid succession.**

Doing so could result in burns.

Preventing Malfunctions

Avoid Strong Magnetic Fields

- **Never place the camera in close proximity to electric motors or other equipment generating strong electromagnetic fields.**

Exposure to strong magnetic fields may cause malfunctions or corrupt image data.

Avoid Condensation Related Problems

- **When moving the equipment rapidly between hot and cold temperatures, you can avoid condensation by placing the equipment in an airtight, resealable plastic bag and letting it adjust to temperature changes slowly before removing it from the bag.**

Moving the equipment rapidly between hot and cold temperatures may cause condensation (water droplets) to form on its external and internal surfaces.

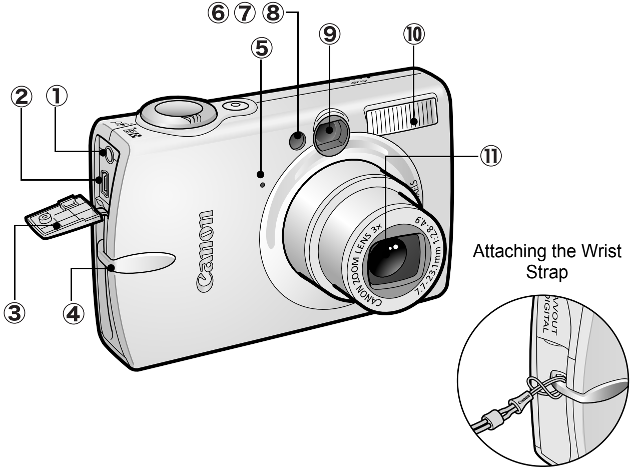
If Condensation Forms Inside the Camera

- **Stop using the camera immediately.**

Continued use may damage the equipment. Remove the memory card and battery or compact power adapter from the camera and wait until the moisture evaporates completely before resuming use.

Before Using the Camera—The Components Guide

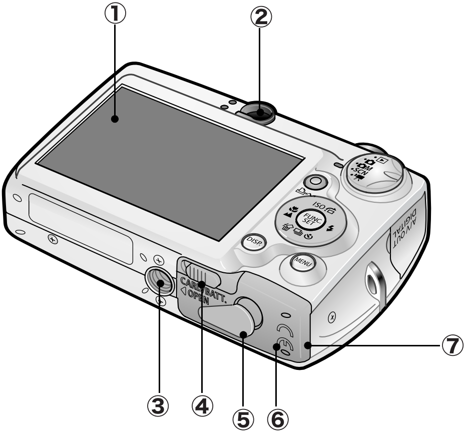
Front View


⑥ ⑦ ⑧
⑤
⑨
⑩
② ①
⑪
③
④
Canon
CANON ZOOM LENS 3x 7.7-23.1mm 1:2.8-4.9
Attaching the Wrist Strap
A/V OUT
DIGITAL

① A/V OUT (Audio/Video output) Terminal (p. 89)
② DIGITAL Terminal (*Basic Guide* p. 19)
③ Terminal Cover (*Basic Guide* p. 19)
④ Wrist Strap Mount
⑤ Microphone (p. 76)
⑥ AF-assist Beam (p. 28)
⑦ Red-Eye Reduction Lamp (*Basic Guide* p. 9)
⑧ Self-Timer Lamp (p. 40)
⑨ Viewfinder Window (p. 21)
⑩ Flash (*Basic Guide* p. 9)
⑪ Lens

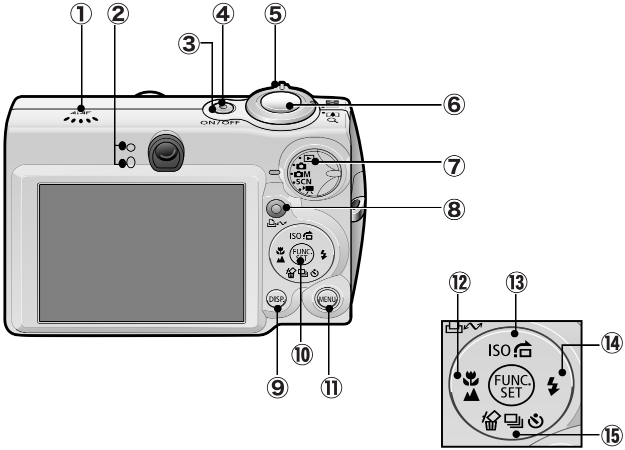
> The interface cable and AV cable cannot be connected simultaneously.

Back View


①
②
SCN
ISO
FUNC. SET
DISP.
MENU
CARD/BATT.
◁ OPEN
A/V OUT DIGITAL
⑦
③
④
⑤
⑥

① LCD Monitor (p. 15)
② Viewfinder (p. 21)
③ Tripod Socket
④ Lock Release Switch
⑤ DC Coupler Terminal Cover
⑥ Memory Card Slot/Battery Cover (*Basic Guide* p. 2)
⑦ Battery Compartment (Memory Card/Battery Compartment)

Operation Panel



① Speaker
② Indicators (p. 22)
③ Power Button (*Basic Guide* p. 5)
④ Power Lamp
⑤ Zoom Lever (p. 69, *Basic Guide* p. 8)
Shooting: 🌲🌲🌲 (Wide Angle)/ [🌲] (Telephoto)
Playback: ▦ (Index)/ 🔍 (Magnify)
⑥ Shutter Button (*Basic Guide* p. 5)
⑦ Mode Dial (*Basic Guide* p. 5, 6)
⑧ ⎙ (Print/Share) Button (*Basic Guide* p. 14)
⑨ **DISP.** (Display) Button (p. 15)
⑩ **FUNC./SET** (Function/Set) Button (p. 26)
⑪ **MENU** Button (p. 27)
⑫ 🌷 (Macro)/ ▲ (Infinity)/ ⬅ Button (*Basic Guide* p. 10)
⑬ ISO (ISO Speed)/ ⎘ (Jump)/ ⬆ Button (p. 64, 71)
⑭ ⚡ (Flash)/ ➡ Button (*Basic Guide* p. 9)
⑮ 🗑 (Single Image Erase)/ ❐ (Continuous)/ ⏲ (Self-timer)/
⬇ Button (p. 38, 40, *Basic Guide* p. 11)

Before Using the Camera—Basic Operations

Using the LCD Monitor

1 Press DISP. .

- The display mode changes as follows with each press.

Shooting Mode
(📷, 📷M, SCN or 🎥)

▶ Standard
(No Information)
↓
Detailed
(Information View)
↓
Off

Playback Mode
(▶)

▶ Standard
↓
Detailed
↓
No Information

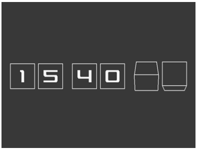
- In the shooting modes, the shooting information displays for approximately 6 sec. when a setting is changed, regardless of the selected display mode.

- The LCD monitor on or off setting is retained even after the camera power is turned off.
- The LCD monitor does not shut off in the Ⓓ, ◇, ▭ or 🎥 mode.
- The LCD monitor will not switch to the detailed display in the index playback mode (p. 70).

Using the Clock

You can display the current date and time for a 5-second* interval using the following two methods.

* Default setting



Method 1

Hold the **FUNC./SET** button down while turning on the power.

Method 2

In a shooting mode, hold the **FUNC./SET** button down continuously.

If you hold the camera horizontally, it displays the time. If you hold it vertically, the time and date display.

However, if you hold the camera vertically and use method 1 to display the date and time, the time will be initially displayed in the same way as when the camera is held horizontally.

- You can change the display color by pressing the ← or → button. Change the color to one you like.
- The clock display will cease when the display interval is over or when you operate the **FUNC./SET**, **MENU** or Shutter button or the mode dial.
- The clock's display interval can be changed in the 🔧 (Set up) menu (p. 30).

LCD Monitor Brightness

LCD Monitor Brightness Settings

The brightness of the LCD monitor can be changed in the following two ways.

- Changing Settings Using the Set up Menu (p. 30)
- Changing Settings Using the **DISP.** Button (Quick-bright LCD Function)

  You can set the LCD monitor to the brightest setting regardless of the option selected in the Set up menu by pressing the **DISP** button for more than one second.*

  - To restore the previous brightness setting, press the **DISP** button for more than one second again.
  - The next time you turn on the camera, the LCD monitor will be at the brightness setting selected in the Set up menu.

* You cannot change the brightness of the LCD monitor with this function if you have already set it to its highest setting in the Set up menu.

Night Display

When shooting in dark conditions, the camera automatically brightens the LCD monitor to suit the brightness of the subject*, making it easier to frame the subject.

* Noise will appear, and the movements of the subject will appear irregular in the LCD monitor. The recorded image will not be affected. The brightness of the image displayed in the monitor, and the brightness of the actual image recorded will be different.

Information Displayed on the LCD Monitor

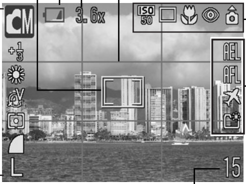
Shooting Information (Shooting mode)

[ ]* Spot AE Point Frame

☐* AF Frame (p. 46)

* Low Battery (p. 105)

Zoom Magnification* (p. 37)
Grid Lines* (p. 28)



- Stills: Recordable Shots
- Movies (Sec.): Remaining Time/ Elapsed Time

ISO 50 ISO 100 ISO 200 ISO 400
ISO Speed (p. 64)

Shooting Method (p. 38, 40)

Macro/Infinity (*Basic Guide* p. 10)

Flash (*Basic Guide* p. 9)

Auto Rotate (p. 65)
● (Red)*
Movie Recording (p. 42)

AEL * AE Lock (p. 48)

FEL * FE Lock (p. 49)

AFL * AF Lock (p. 47)

Time Zone (p. 24)

* Create Folder (p. 66)

Shooting Mode (*Basic Guide* p. 6, p. 35, 36, 42, 44, 58)

-2 · · · +2
Exposure Compensation (p. 51)

1" · · · 15"
Long Shutter Mode (p. 52)

White Balance (p. 54)

V N LS S BW
Photo Effect (p. 57)

P L D B G R A S C
My Colors (p. 58)

Metering Mode (p. 50)

S
Compression (p. 32)

60 30 15
Frame Rate (Movie) (p. 34)

L M1 M2 M3 S 640 320 160
Resolution (p. 32, 34)

* Camera Shake Warning (p. 53, 94)
(The shutter speed will also display when the displays.)

Exposure Shift Bar (Movie) (p. 44)

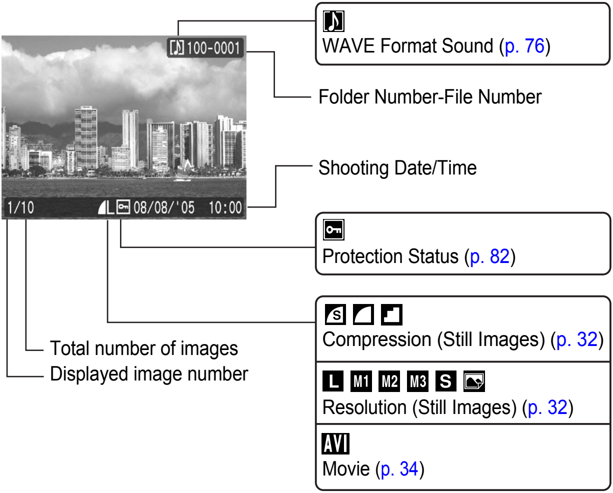
---

* Appears even if the LCD monitor is set to Standard display.

If the indicator blinks orange and the camera shake icon displays, it indicates there is insufficient illumination and a slow shutter speed will be selected. Raise the ISO speed (p. 64) or select a setting other than (flash off), or attach the camera to a tripod or other device.

Playback Information (Playback Mode)

Standard



♪
WAVE Format Sound (p. 76)

Folder Number-File Number

Shooting Date/Time

Protection Status (p. 82)

S
Compression (Still Images) (p. 32)

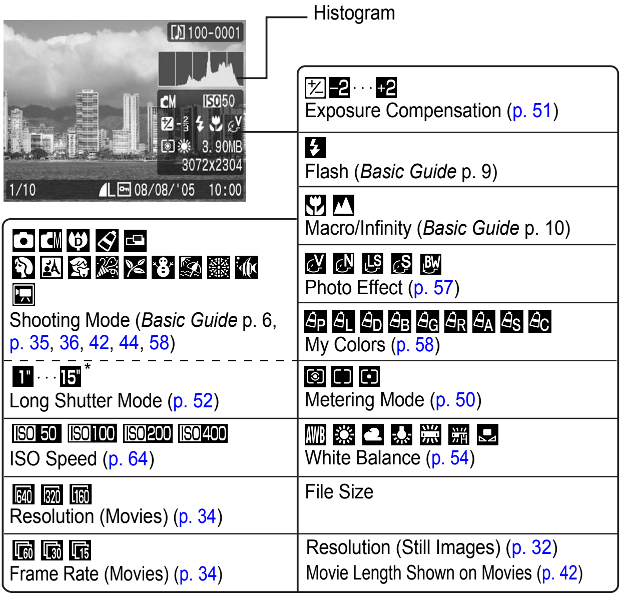
L M1 M2 M3 S
Resolution (Still Images) (p. 32)

AVI
Movie (p. 34)

Total number of images

Displayed image number

Detailed


Histogram
100-0001
ISO50
-⅔
3. 90MB
3072x2304
1/10
L 08/08/'05 10:00
-2 ··· +2
Exposure Compensation (p. 51)
Flash (Basic Guide p. 9)
Macro/Infinity (Basic Guide p. 10)
Photo Effect (p. 57)
My Colors (p. 58)
Metering Mode (p. 50)
AWB
White Balance (p. 54)
File Size
Resolution (Still Images) (p. 32)
Movie Length Shown on Movies (p. 42)
Shooting Mode (Basic Guide p. 6, p. 35, 36, 42, 44, 58)
1" ··· 15" *
Long Shutter Mode (p. 52)
ISO 50 ISO 100 ISO 200 ISO 400
ISO Speed (p. 64)
640 320 160
Resolution (Movies) (p. 34)
60 30 15
Frame Rate (Movies) (p. 34)

The following information may also be displayed with some images.

♪?	A sound file in a format other than the WAVE format is attached or the file format is not recognized.
⚠	JPEG image not conforming to Design rule for Camera File System Standards
RAW	RAW image
?	Unrecognized data type

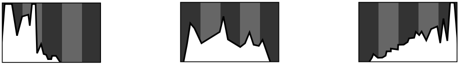
Information for images shot on other cameras may not display correctly.

Histogram Function

The histogram is a graph that allows you to judge the brightness of the shot image. The greater the bias toward the left in the graph, the darker the image. The greater the bias toward the right, the brighter the image.

If the image is too dark, adjust the exposure compensation to a positive value. Similarly, adjust the exposure compensation to a negative value if the image is too bright (p. 51).

Sample Histograms



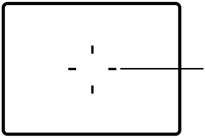
Dark Image

Balanced Image

Bright Image

Using the Viewfinder

The viewfinder can be used to conserve power by turning the LCD monitor off (p. 15) while shooting.



Viewfinder

Indicators

The indicators light or blink when the power button or the shutter button is pressed.

Never do the following while an indicator is lit. These actions may corrupt image data.
- Shake or jolt the camera
- Shut off the power, or open the memory card slot/battery cover

●Upper Indicator

Green:	Ready to shoot
Blinking Green:	Image recording/reading/erasing/transferring (when connected to a computer)
Orange:	Ready to shoot (flash on)
Blinking Orange:	Ready to shoot (camera shake warning)

●Lower Indicator

Yellow:	Macro mode/infinity mode/AF lock mode
Blinking Yellow:	Focusing difficulty (camera beeps once)

Power Saving Function

This camera is equipped with a power saving function. The power will shut off in the following circumstances. Press the power button again to restore power.

Shooting Mode	Powers down approximately 3 minutes after the last control is accessed on the camera. The LCD monitor automatically turns off 1 minute* after the last control is accessed even if [Auto Power Down] is set to [Off]. Press any button other than the power button or change the camera orientation to turn the LCD monitor back on.
Playback Mode **Connected to a Printer**	Powers down approximately 5 minutes after the last control is accessed on the camera.

* This time can be changed.

- The power saving function will not activate during a slide show or while the camera is connected to a computer.
- The power saving function settings can be changed (p. 30).

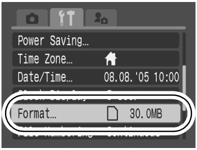
Formatting Memory Cards

You should always format a new memory card or one from which you wish to erase all images and other data.

Please note that formatting (initializing) a memory card erases all data, including protected images and other file types.

1 (Set up) Menu ▶ [Format].

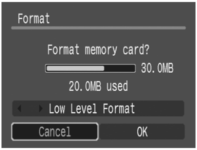
See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



Power Saving...
Time Zone... 🏠
Date/Time... 08.08.'05 10:00
Format... 30.0MB

2 Select [OK] and press FUNC. SET.

- To perform a low level format, use the ▲ button to select [Low Level Format] and the ◀ or ▶ button to add a check mark.
- You can stop formatting a card when [Low Level Format] is selected by pressing the **FUNC./SET** button. You can still use a card without problem when formatting is halted, but its data will be erased.



Format
Format memory card?
30.0MB
20.0MB used
Low Level Format
Cancel OK

Low Level Format
We recommend you select [Low Level Format] when you think that the recording/reading speed of a memory card has dropped. A low level format may require 2 to 3 minutes with some memory cards.

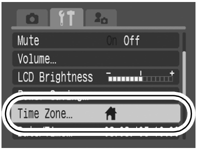
Setting the World Clock

When traveling abroad, you can record images with local dates and times simply by switching the time zone setting if you pre-register the destination time zones. You can enjoy the convenience of not having to switch the Date/Time settings.

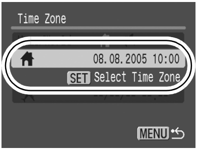
Setting the Home/World Time Zones

1 **(Set up) Menu ▶ [Time Zone] ▶ (FUNC./SET).**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).

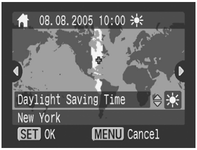

Mute
On Off
Volume...
LCD Brightness
Time Zone...

2 **⌂ ▶ (FUNC./SET).**

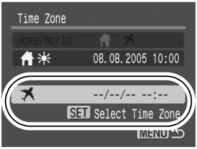

Time Zone
08.08.2005 10:00
SET Select Time Zone
MENU

3 **Use the ← or → button to select a home time zone ▶ (FUNC./SET).**

- To set the daylight saving option, use the ↑ or ↓ button to display ☀. The time will advance by 1 hour.

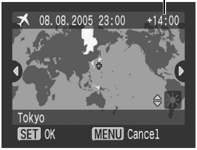

08.08.2005 10:00
Daylight Saving Time
New York
SET OK
MENU Cancel

4 **✈ ▶ (FUNC./SET).**


Time Zone
Home/World
08.08.2005 10:00
--/--/-- --:--
SET Select Time Zone
MENU

5 **Use the ← or → button to select a destination time zone ▶ FUNC. SET.**

- As in Step 3, you can set the daylight saving option.


08.08.2005 23:00
+14:00
Tokyo
SET OK
MENU Cancel

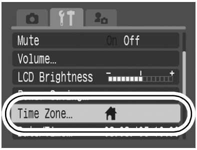
Time Difference from the Home Time Zone

6 **Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Home/World], and the ← or → button to select ⌂ ▶ MENU.**

Switching to the Destination Time Zone

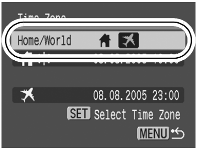
1 **(Set up) Menu ▶ [Time Zone] ▶ FUNC. SET.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).


Mute On Off
Volume...
LCD Brightness - +
Time Zone... ⌂

2 **Use the ← or → button to select ✈ ▶ MENU.**

- To change the destination time zone, use the **FUNC./SET** button.


Time Zone
Home/World ⌂ ✈
08.08.2005 23:00
SET Select Time Zone
MENU ↶

If you change the date and time when the World option is selected, the Home date and time will also change automatically. (*Basic* p. 4)

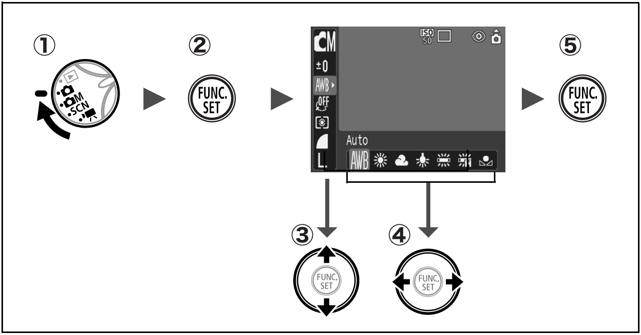
Menus and Settings

Menus are used to set the shooting and playback settings as well as such camera settings as the date/time and electronic beep. The following menus are available.

- **FUNC. Menu**
- **Rec., Play, Set up and My Camera Menus**

FUNC. Menu

This menu sets many of the common shooting functions.



① **Turn the mode dial to 📷, 📷M, SCN or 🎥.**

② **Press the FUNC./SET button.**

③ **Use the ▲ or ▼ button to select a menu item.**

Some items may not be selectable in some shooting modes.

④ **Use the ◀ or ▶ button to select an option for the menu item.**

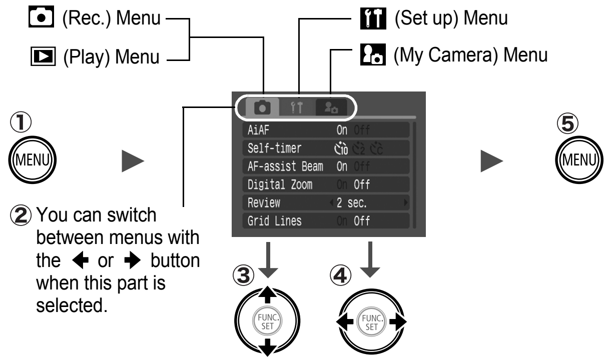
You can select further options with the **MENU** button for some options.

After selecting an option, you can press the shutter button to shoot immediately. After shooting, this menu will appear again, allowing you to adjust the settings easily.

⑤ **Press the FUNC./SET button.**

Rec., Play, Set up and My Camera Menus

Convenient settings for shooting or playback can be set with these menus.


(Rec.) Menu
(Play) Menu
(Set up) Menu
(My Camera) Menu
①
MENU
② You can switch between menus with the ← or → button when this part is selected.
③
④
FUNC. SET
FUNC. SET
⑤
MENU

AiAF On Off
Self-timer
AF-assist Beam On Off
Digital Zoom On Off
Review 2 sec.
Grid Lines On Off

- This example shows the Rec. menu.
- In playback mode, the Play menu displays.

① **Press the MENU button.**

② **Use the ← or → button to switch between menus.**

You can also use the zoom lever to switch between menus.

③ **Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select menu items.**

Some items may not be selectable in some shooting modes.

④ **Use the ← or → button to select an option.**

Menu items followed by an ellipsis (...) can only be set after pressing the **FUNC./SET** button to display the next menu. Press the **FUNC./SET** button again to confirm the setting.

⑤ **Press the MENU button.**

Menu List

FUNC. Menu

The icons shown below are the default settings.

Menu Item		Page	Menu Item		Page
M	Manual Mode	p. 35	P	My Colors	p. 58
	Special Scene Mode	p. 35		Stitch Assist	p. 44
	Movie Mode	p. 42		Metering Mode	p. 50
±0	Exposure Compensation	p. 51		Compression	p. 32
1"	Long Shutter Mode	p. 52	30	Frame Rate (Movie)	p. 34
AWB	White Balance	p. 54	L	Resolution (Still Image)	p. 32
OFF	Photo Effect	p. 57	640	Resolution (Movie)	p. 34

Rec. Menu

* Default setting

Menu Item	Options	Page/Topic
AiAF	On*/Off	p. 46
Self-timer	10 10 seconds*/2 2 seconds/C Custom Timer (Delay: 0–10*, 15, 20, 30 sec.) (Shots: 1–3*–10)	p. 40
AF-assist Beam	On*/Off	–
Digital Zoom	On/Off* (On in standard movie mode.)	p. 37
Review	Off/2*–10 seconds/Hold	*Basic Guide* (p. 6)
Save Original	On/Off*	p. 60
Grid Lines	On/Off*	You can display grid lines (split into nine) to make it easier to judge the horizontal and vertical alignment of a photographic subject and to make composition easier. The lines will not be recorded in the images.
Date Stamp	Off*/Date/Date & Time	p. 39
Long Shutter	On/Off*	p. 52

Play Menu

Menu Item	Page	Menu Item	Page
Protect	p. 82	Slide Show	p. 78
Rotate	p. 75	Print Order	p. 83
Sound Memo	p. 76	Transfer Order	p. 87
Erase All	p. 82	Transition	p. 76

Set up Menu

* Default setting

Menu Item		Options	Page/Topic
Mute		On/Off*	Set to [On] to silence the start-up, operation, self-timer and shutter sounds all at once. However, warnings still sound even when the mute is set to [On]. (*Basic* p. 5)
Volume		Off/1/2*/3/4/5	Adjusts the volume of the start-up sound, operation sound, self-timer sound, shutter sound and playback sound. The volume cannot be adjusted if [Mute] is set to [On].
	Start-up Vol.		Adjusts the volume of the start-up sound when the camera is turned on.
	Operation Vol.		Adjusts the volume of the operation sound that beeps when any button other than the shutter button is pressed.
	Selftimer Vol.		Adjusts the volume of the self-timer sound played 2 sec. before the shutter is released.
	Shutter Volume		Adjusts the volume of the sound played when the shutter releases. The shutter sound does not play when a movie is recording.
	Playback Vol.		Adjusts the volume of movie sounds and sound memos.

LCD Brightness	-7 to 0* to +7	Use the ⬅ or ➡ button to adjust the brightness. If you press the ⬆ or ⬇ button, the display returns to the Set up menu. You can check the brightness in the LCD monitor while you are adjusting the setting.
Power Saving		p. 22
Auto Power Down	On*/Off	Sets whether or not the camera automatically powers down after a set period of time elapses without the camera being operated.
Display Off	10 sec./20 sec./ 30 sec./1 min.*/ 2 min./3min.	Sets the length of time before the LCD monitor turns off when no camera operation is performed.
Time Zone	Home*/World	p. 24
Date/Time		*Basic Guide* (p. 4)
Clock Display	0–5*–10 sec./20 sec./30 sec./1 min./2 min./3 min.	p. 16
Format		p. 23
File Numbering	Auto Reset/ Continuous*	p. 67
Create Folder		p. 66
Create New Folder	Check mark (On)/ No check mark (Off)	Creates a folder for the next shooting session.
Auto Create	Off*/Daily/ Monday–Sunday/ Monthly	You can also set a creation time.
Auto Rotate	On*/Off	p. 65
Language		*Basic Guide* (p. 4)
Video System	NTSC/PAL	p. 89
Reset All		p. 31

My Camera Menu

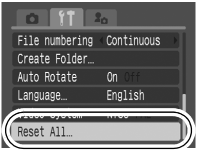
* Default setting

Menu Item	Available Settings	Page
Theme	Selects a common theme for each My Camera settings item.	p. 90
Start-up Image	Sets the image displayed when the camera power is turned on.	
Start-up Sound	Sets the sound played when the camera power is turned on.	
Operation Sound	Sets the sound played when any button other than the shutter button is pressed.	
Selftimer Sound	Sets the sound played 2 seconds before the shutter releases in self-timer mode.	
Shutter Sound	Sets the sound played when the shutter button is pressed. There is no shutter sound for movies.	
My Camera Menu Contents	(Off)/ 1*/ 2 / 3	

Resetting Settings to Their Default Values

1 **(Set up) Menu ▶ [Reset All].**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



2 **Select [OK] and press FUNC. SET.**

- Settings cannot be reset when the camera is connected to a computer or to a printer.
- The following cannot be reset.
  - Shooting mode
  - The [Time Zone], [Date/Time], [Language] and [Video System] options in the (Set up) menu (p. 30)
  - White balance data recorded with the custom white balance function (p. 55)
  - Colors specified in the [Color Accent] (p. 61) or [Color Swap] (p. 62) modes of My Colors.
  - Newly added My Camera settings (p. 91)

Changing the Resolution and Compression (Still Images)

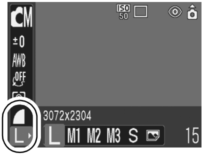
Shooting Mode M SCN M

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ L * (Resolution)/◢ * (Compression).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

* Default setting.

- Use the ← or → button to select resolution/compression settings and press the **FUNC./SET** button.



Approximate Values for Resolutions

Resolution			Purpose
L (Large)	3072 x 2304 pixels	High ↑	Print A3-size prints 297 mm x 420 mm (11.7 x 16.5 in.)
M1 (Medium 1)	2592 x 1944 pixels		Print larger than A4-size prints* 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in.) Print larger than Letter-size prints* 216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)
M2 (Medium 2)	2048 x 1536 pixels		Print up to A4-size prints* 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in.) Print up to Letter-size prints* 216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)
M3 (Medium 3)	1600 x 1200 pixels	↓	Print postcard-size prints 148 x 100 mm (6 x 4 in.) Print L-size prints 119 x 89 mm (4.7 x 3.5 in.)
S (Small)	640 x 480 pixels	Low	Send images as e-mail attachments Shoot more images
(Postcard Date Imprint Mode)	1600 x 1200 pixels	When printing to postcards (p. 39).	

* Paper sizes vary according to region.

Approximate Values for Compression Settings

Compression		Purpose
Superfine	High Quality	Shoot higher quality images
Fine	↕	Shoot normal quality images
Normal	Normal	Shoot more images

- See *Image Data Sizes (Estimated)* (p. 118).
- See *Memory Cards and Estimated Capacities* (p. 117).

Changing Resolutions and Frame Rates (Movies)

Shooting Mode

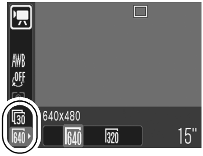
You can change the resolution and frame rate when the movie mode is set to (Standard) or (My Colors).

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ 640* (Resolution)/ 30* (Frame Rate).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ◀ or ▶ button to select a resolution/frame rate and press the **FUNC./SET** button.



Resolutions and Frame Rates

	Resolution	Frame Rate (frames/sec.)		
		60	30	15
Standard	640 640 x 480 pixels	–	○	○
My Colors	320 320 x 240 pixels	–	○	○
Fast Frame Rate	320 320 x 240 pixels	○	–	–
Compact	160 160 x 120 pixels	–	–	○

* Frame rates indicate the number of frames recorded or played back each second. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the appearance of motion.

* The resolution and frame rate are fixed in the and modes.

- See *Image Data Sizes (Estimated)* (p. 118).
- See *Memory Cards and Estimated Capacities* (p. 117).

SCN Shooting in a Special Scene Mode

Shooting Mode SCN

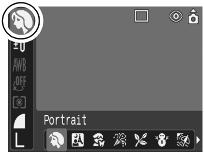
You can take an optimal picture simply by selecting the appropriate shooting mode.

1 **FUNC. Menu ▶ * (Portrait).**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ← or → button to select a shooting mode and press the **FUNC./SET** button.
- See the *Basic Guide* (p. 7) for explanations of the Special Scene modes.



2 **Shoot.**

Shooting in Manual Mode

Shooting Mode M M

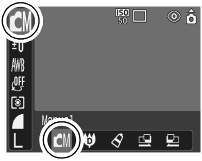
You can adjust settings yourself, such as the exposure, white balance and photo effect, when shooting in this mode.

1 **FUNC. Menu ▶ M* (Manual).**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- See the *Basic Guide* (p. 6) for Manual mode explanations.



2 **Change the settings as required and shoot.**

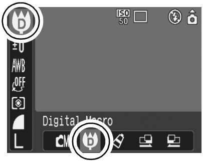
Magnified Close-Up Shooting (Digital Macro)

Shooting Mode

You can shoot a subject from as close as 5 cm (2.0 in.) (minimum focal distance) from the end of the lens at the maximum wide angle setting. With the digital zoom, the image area is 14 x 11 mm (0.55 x 0.43 in.) at maximum zoom (approximately 4 times).

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ (Manual) ▶ (Digital Macro).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).



2 Choose the angle of view with the zoom lever and shoot.

Using the Digital Zoom

Shooting Mode ◘ ◘M SCN ◘ ◘M ◘

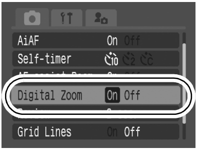
You can shoot zoomed images using the combined digital and optical zooms.

- Stills: zoom up to approximately 12 times
- Movies (Standard): zoom up to approximately 12 times

> ❗ The digital zoom cannot be used when the LCD monitor is turned off.

1 ◘ (Rec.) Menu ▶ [Digital Zoom] ▶ [On].

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



AiAF On Off

Self-timer

Digital Zoom On Off

Grid Lines On Off

2 Press the zoom lever toward [♠] and shoot.

- The combined digital and optical zoom setting will display in the LCD monitor.
- When you press the zoom lever toward [♠], the zoom stops when the lens reaches the maximum optical telephoto setting (when shooting still images).
  Press the zoom lever toward [♠] again to activate the digital zoom and further zoom the image digitally.
- Press the zoom lever toward [♠♠♠] to zoom out.

Images become coarser the more they are digitally zoomed.

❐ Continuous Shooting

Shooting Mode M SCN M

In this mode, the camera shoots continuously while the shutter button is held down.
If you use the recommended memory card*, you can shoot continuously (smooth continuous shooting) at a set shooting interval until the memory card is full (p. 117).

***Recommended Memory Card**
Super high speed SDC-512 MSH memory card (sold separately) immediately after a low level format (p. 23).

- This reflects standard shooting criteria established by Canon. Actual results may vary according to the subject and shooting conditions.
- Even if continuous shooting suddenly stops, the memory card may not be full.

1 Press the ❐ to display ❐.

2 Shoot.

- The camera will continue to record successive images while the shutter button is fully pressed. Recording will cease when the shutter button is released.

To Cancel Continuous Shooting
Press the ❐ button twice to display ■.

- The interval between shots lengthens when the built-in memory of the camera fills.
- If the flash is used, the interval between shots lengthens because the flash must charge.

Postcard Date Imprint Mode

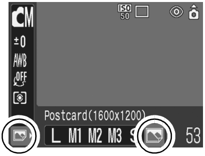
Shooting Mode 📷 📷M SCN CM 🖌

You can shoot images with the optimal settings for postcards by composing them inside the print area (width-to-height ratio of approximately 3:2) shown in the LCD monitor.

1 **FUNC. Menu ▶ 640* (Resolution) ▶ 🖼 (Post Card Date Imprint).**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.



Postcard(1600x1200)

L M1 M2 M3 S 🖼 53

- The resolution is set to M3 (1600 x 1200) and the compression to ◢ (Fine).
- When you press the shutter button halfway, the area that will not get printed grays out.

The digital zoom cannot be used in this mode.

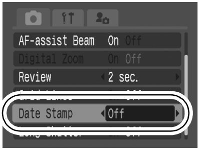
For printing instructions, refer to the *Direct Print User Guide*.

Embedding the Date in the Image Data

You can embed the date in image data when 🖼 (Postcard Date Imprint Mode) is selected.

1 **📷 (Rec.) Menu ▶ [Date Stamp] ▶ [Date]/ [Date & Time].**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



AF-assist Beam On Off

Digital Zoom On Off

Review 2 sec.

Date Stamp Off

- **LCD Monitor Display**

🖼 : [Off]

🖼 : [Date]/[Date & Time]

- Ensure that the camera's date/time is set beforehand (p. 30).
- The date stamp cannot be deleted from the image data once it has been set.

⏱ Using the Self-Timer

Shooting Mode 📷 📷M SCN 🎥 CM ☺ ⚡ ▭

You can set a 10 sec. (⏱10) or 2 sec. delay (⏱2), or a custom delay time and the number of shots (⏱C Custom Timer), for shooting after the shutter button is pressed.

1 **Press the ⏱ button to display ⏱10, ⏱2 or ⏱C.**

2 **Shoot.**

- When the shutter button is pressed fully, the self-timer will activate and the self-timer lamp will blink. When using red-eye reduction, the self-timer lamp will blink and then stay lit for the last 2 seconds.

To Cancel the Self-Timer

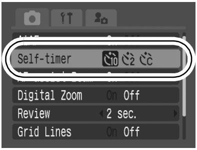
Press the ⏱ button to display ■.

You can change the self-timer sound (p. 31).

Changing the Self-Timer Countdown Time (⏱10/⏱2)

1 **📷 (Rec.) Menu ▶ [Self-timer] ▶ ⏱10 or ⏱2.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27)..



Self-timer ⏱10 ⏱2 ⏱C

Digital Zoom On Off

Review 2 sec.

Grid Lines On Off

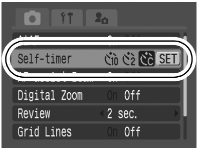
- The following occurs with each option.
  - ⏱10: 2 sec. before the shutter releases, the self-timer sound and lamp will speed up.
  - ⏱2: The self-timer sound will play when the shutter button is pressed and the shutter will release 2 sec. later.

Changing the Delay Time and Number of Shots (⏲C).

You can change the delay time (0–10, 15, 20, 30 sec.) and number of shots (1–10). These settings, however, cannot be set for the Stitch Assist mode, movie mode or My Colors modes.

1 📷 (Rec.) Menu ▶ [Self-timer] ▶ ⏲C ▶ FUNC. SET.

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



Self-timer ⏲10 ⏲2 ⏲C SET

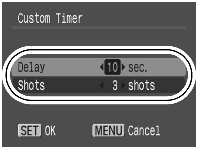
Digital Zoom On Off

Review 2 sec.

Grid Lines On Off

2 Change [Delay]/[Shots] ▶ FUNC. SET.

- The self-timer sound will behave as follows.
  - The self-timer sound will start 2 sec. before the specified delay for shooting is over.
  - If multiple shots have been specified for the [Shots] option, the sound will play for the first shot only.



Custom Timer

Delay 10 sec.

Shots 3 shots

SET OK MENU Cancel

If the [Shots] option is set to 2 or more shots, the following occurs.

- The exposure and white balance are locked at the settings selected for the first shot.
- The interval between shots lengthens when the built-in memory of the camera fills.
- If the flash is used, the interval between shots lengthens because the flash must charge.
- Shooting will automatically cease if the memory card becomes full.

Movie Shooting

Shooting Mode

The following four movie modes are available.

Standard

You can select the resolution and frame rate and record until the memory card is full (when a super high-speed memory card is used, such as the recommended SDC-512MSH). The digital zoom can be used while shooting in this mode. (p. 37)

- Resolution: 640 (640 x 480), 320 (320 x 240)
- Frame Rate: 30 (30 frames/sec.), 15 (15 frames/sec.)
- Maximum Size: 1 GB/movie

Fast Frame Rate

Use this mode to record fast moving subjects, such as in sports photography.

- Resolution: 320 (320 x 240)
- Frame Rate: 60 (60 frames/sec.)
- Maximum Clip Length: 1 minute

Compact

Since the resolution is low, this mode is convenient for sending movies as e-mail attachments or when the memory card capacity is low.

- Resolution: 160 (160 x 120)
- Frame Rate: 15 (15 frames/sec.)
- Maximum Clip Length: 3 minutes

My Colors

You can change image colors and then shoot (p. 58). As with the Standard mode, you can also select the resolution and frame rate and record until the memory card is full (when a super high-speed memory card is used, such as the recommended SDC-512MSH).

- Resolution: 640 (640 x 480), 320 (320 x 240)
- Frame Rate: 30 (30 frames/sec.), 15 (15 frames/sec.)
- Maximum Size: 1 GB/movie

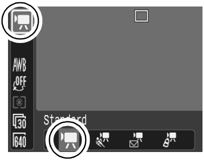
- The recording time will vary according to the capacity of the memory card you use (p. 117).

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ 🎥* (Standard).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ← or → button to select a movie mode and press the **FUNC./SET** button.
- In 🎥 or 🎥 mode, you can change the resolution and frame rate (p. 34).



2 Shoot.

- Pressing the shutter button halfway automatically sets the exposure, focus and white balance settings.
- Pressing the shutter button fully starts recording video and sound simultaneously.
- During shooting the recording time (in seconds) and [●Rec] appear on the LCD monitor.
- Pressing the shutter button fully again stops recording. Recording will stop automatically under the following circumstances.
  - When the maximum recording time elapses
  - When the built-in memory or memory card become full

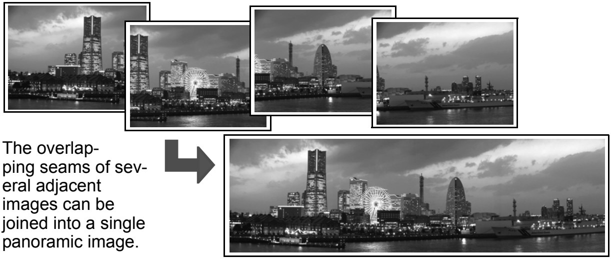
- You are recommended to use a memory card that has been formatted in your camera to shoot movies (p. 23). The card supplied with the camera may be used without further formatting.
- Be careful of the following while recording.
  - Try not to touch the microphone.
  - Do not press any buttons other than the shutter button. The sound that buttons make will be recorded in the movie.
  - The camera will automatically adjust the exposure and white balance to suit the shooting conditions during recording. Please note, however, that the sounds made by the camera automatically adjusting the exposure may also be recorded.
- The focus and optical zoom settings remain fixed for subsequent frames at the values selected for the first frame.

- Before recording, you can set the AE lock (p. 48) and exposure shift.
  1. Press the ISO button.
     The exposure will lock (AE lock) and the exposure shift bar will appear in the LCD monitor.
  2. Use the ← or → button to adjust the exposure.
     Press the ISO button again to release the setting. Also, the setting will be canceled if you press the **MENU** button or change the white balance, photo effect or shooting mode settings.
- QuickTime 3.0 or later is required to play back movies (Data type: AVI/Compression method: Motion JPEG) on a computer. QuickTime (for Windows) is included on the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk. On the Macintosh platform, this program is standard with Mac OS X or later.

Shooting Panoramic Images (Stitch Assist)

Shooting Mode M

Stitch Assist can be used to shoot overlapping images that can later be merged (stitched) to create one panoramic image on a computer.



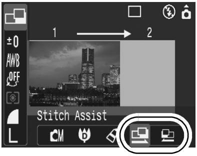
The overlapping seams of several adjacent images can be joined into a single panoramic image.

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ ▣* (Manual) ▶ ▣ (Stitch Assist).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

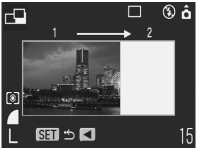
*Default setting.

- You can select from the following two shooting directions.
  - ▣ Left to right horizontally
  - ▣ Right to left horizontally



2 Shoot the first image in the sequence.

- The exposure and white balance are set and locked with the first image.



3 Compose the second image so that it overlaps a portion of the first and shoot.

- You can retake a shot by pressing the ← or → button and returning to the previously recorded image screen.
- Minor discrepancies in the overlapping portions can be corrected when the images are stitched together.

4 Repeat the procedure for additional images.

- A sequence may contain up to 26 images.
- Press the **FUNC./SET** button after the last shot.

- You cannot display the images on a TV when shooting in Stitch Assist mode.
- The settings for the first image are applied to the second image onward.

Use PhotoStitch, a supplied software program, to merge the images on a computer.

Switching between Focusing Modes

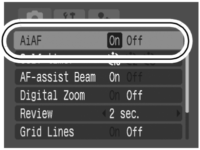
Shooting Mode

You can select between the following two focusing modes according to the AiAF setting.

(No frame)	On	The camera detects the subject and highlights the AF frames, from 9 available points, that it will use to determine the focus.
☐	Off	The camera focuses using the center AF frame. This is convenient for focusing on a specific part of a subject with greater certainty.

1 (Rec.) Menu ▶ [AiAF] ▶ [On]/[Off].

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



AiAF On Off

AF-assist Beam On Off

Digital Zoom On Off

Review 2 sec.

Grid Lines On Off

- The focus is locked to the center AF frame when the digital zoom is used.
- The AF frame appears as follows (when the LCD monitor is on) when the shutter button is pressed halfway.
  - Green: Shooting preparations complete
  - Yellow: Focusing difficulty (AiAF set to [Off])

Shooting Hard-to-Focus Subjects (Focus Lock, AF Lock)

Shooting Mode 📷 📷M SCN 🎥 CM ⓓ ✎ ▭

It may be difficult to focus on the following types of subjects.

- Subjects with extremely low contrast to the surroundings
- Scenes with a mixture of near and far subjects.
- Subjects with extremely bright objects at the center of the composition
- Subjects that are moving quickly
- Subjects through glass: Try to shoot as close to the glass as possible to reduce the chances of light reflecting back off the glass.

Shooting with the Focus Lock

The focus lock can be used in any shooting mode.

1. **Aim the camera so that an object at the same focal distance as the main subject is centered in the viewfinder or in the AF frame displayed on the LCD monitor.**
2. **Press the shutter button halfway.**
3. **Re-aim the camera to compose the shot as desired and press the shutter button fully.**

Shooting with the AF Lock

The AF lock cannot be used in the 📷, SCN or ▭ mode.

1. **Turn on the LCD monitor.**
2. **Aim the camera so that an object at the same focal distance as the main subject is centered in the AF frame.**
3. **Press the shutter button halfway and press the 🌷/▲ button.**
   - The AFL icon will display and the lower indicator will light yellow.

4 Re-aim the camera to compose the shot as desired and shoot.

To Release the AF Lock

Press the ✿/▲ button.

- When shooting with the focus lock or AF lock using the LCD monitor, setting [AiAF] to [Off] (p. 28) makes shooting easier since the camera focuses using the center AF frame only.
- The AF lock is convenient because you can let go of the shutter button to compose the image. Moreover, the AF lock is still effective after the picture is taken, allowing you to capture a second image with the same focus.

Locking the Exposure Setting (AE Lock)

Shooting Mode 📷M 🎥 CM ☺ ✎

You can set the exposure and focus separately. This is effective when the contrast is too strong between the subject and background or when a subject is backlit.

You must set the flash to [⚡]. The AE lock cannot be set if the flash fires.

1 Turn on the LCD monitor.

2 Focus on the part of the subject on which you wish to lock the exposure setting.

3 Press the shutter button halfway and press the ISO button.

- The AEL icon will display.

4 Re-aim the camera to compose the shot as desired and press the shutter button fully.

To Release the AE Lock

Press the ISO button.

- AE lock can also be set and released in 🎥 mode (p. 44).
- You can use the FE lock when using the flash.

Locking the Flash Exposure Setting (FE Lock)

Shooting Mode 📷M CM ✎

You can lock the flash exposure so that the exposure settings are correctly set regardless of the composition of your subject.

1 **Turn on the LCD monitor.**

2 **Press the ⚡ button and set it to ⚡ (flash on).**

3 **Focus on the part of the subject on which you wish to lock the flash exposure setting.**

4 **Press the shutter button halfway and press the ISO button.**

- The flash will pre-fire and FEL will display.

5 **Re-aim the camera to compose the shot as desired and press the shutter button fully.**

To Release the FE Lock

Press the ISO button.

Switching between Metering Modes

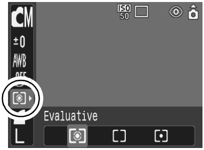
Shooting Mode

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ ◙* (Evaluative).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ← or → button to select the metering mode and press the **FUNC./SET** button.



Metering Methods

◙	**Evaluative**	Appropriate for standard shooting conditions, including backlit scenes. The camera divides images into several zones for metering. It evaluates complex lighting conditions, such as the position of the subject, the brightness, the direct light, and the backlighting, and adjusts the settings to the correct exposure for the main subject.
[ ]	**Center Weighted Average**	Averages the light metered from the entire frame, but gives greater weight to the subject matter at the center.
[•]	**Spot**	Meters the area within the spot AE point at the center of the LCD monitor. Use this setting when you want to set the exposure on the subject in the center of the monitor.

Adjusting the Exposure Compensation

Shooting Mode M SCN M

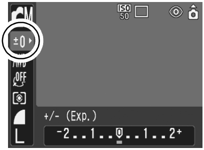
Adjust the exposure compensation setting to avoid making the subject too dark when it is backlit or shot against a bright background or to avoid making lights appear too bright in night shots.

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ ±0* (Exposure Compensation).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ← or → button to adjust the exposure compensation and press the **FUNC./SET** button.



To Cancel the Exposure Compensation
Restore the compensation value to [0].

- Exposure compensation is not available in the A or S My Colors mode.
- In 🎥 mode, the exposure shift can be set/canceled (p. 44).

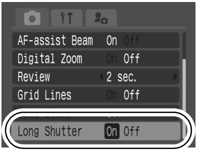
Shooting in Long Shutter Mode

Shooting Mode

You can set the shutter speed to a slow setting to make dark subjects appear brighter.

1 (Rec.) Menu ▶ [Long Shutter] ▶ [On].

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).

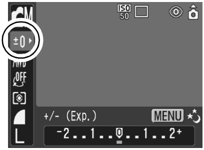


AF-assist Beam On Off
Digital Zoom On Off
Review 2 sec.
Grid Lines On Off
Long Shutter On Off

2 FUNC. Menu ▶ ±0* (Exposure Compensation) ▶ MENU.

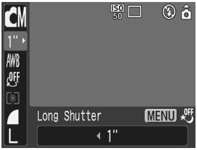
See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.



3 Use the ← or → button to select the shutter speed ▶ FUNC. SET.

- The higher the value, the brighter the image and the lower the value, the darker the image.



Long Shutter 1"

To Cancel the Long Shutter Mode

Press the **MENU** button when the Long Shutter FUNC. menu is displayed.

The nature of CCD image sensors is such that noise in the recorded image increases at long shutter speeds. This camera, however, applies special processing to images shot at shutter speeds slower than 1.3 seconds to eliminate the noise, thereby producing high-quality images. A certain amount of processing time, however, may be required before the next image can be shot.

- Use the LCD monitor to confirm that the image was recorded at the desired brightness.
- Please note that camera shake becomes a factor at low shutter speeds. If the camera shake warning 📳 appears on the LCD monitor, secure the camera to a tripod before shooting.
- Use of the flash may result in an over-exposed image. If this occurs, shoot with the flash set to ⊘.
- The following are unavailable:
  - Exposure Compensation
  - Light Metering
  - AE Lock
  - FE Lock
  - ISO speed: Auto
  - Flash: Auto, Auto with Red-Eye Reduction

Adjusting the Tone (White Balance)

Shooting Mode

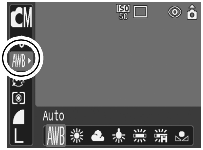
Normally, the AWB (Auto) white balance setting selects an optimal white balance. When the AWB (Auto) setting cannot produce natural looking colors, change the white balance using a setting appropriate for the light source.

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ AWB* (Auto).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ◆ or ◆ button to select a white balance setting and press the **FUNC./SET** button.



White Balance Settings

AWB	**Auto**	Settings are automatically set by the camera
☼	**Day Light**	For recording outdoors on a bright day
☁	**Cloudy**	For recording under overcast, shady or twilight skies
💡	**Tungsten**	For recording under tungsten and bulb-type 3-wavelength fluorescent lighting
▭	**Fluorescent**	For recording under warm-white, cool-white or warm-white (3-wavelength) fluorescent lighting
H	**Fluorescent H**	For recording under daylight fluorescent, or daylight fluorescent-type 3-wavelength fluorescent lighting
▣	**Custom**	For recording with the optimal white balance data memorized in the camera from a white-colored object, such as white paper or cloth

> ! This setting cannot be adjusted when the S or BW photo effect is selected.

Using the Custom White Balance

You can set a custom white balance to obtain the optimal setting for the shooting conditions by having the camera evaluate an object, such as a piece of white paper or cloth, or a photo-quality gray card that you wish to establish as the standard white color.

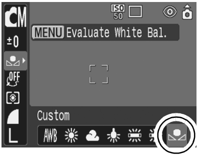
In particular, take a custom white balance reading for the following situations that are difficult for the AWB (Auto) setting to detect correctly.

- Shooting close-ups
- Shooting subjects of monotone color (such as sky, sea or forest)
- Shooting with a peculiar source of light (such as a mercury-vapor lamp)

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ AWB* (Auto) ▶ ▣ (Custom).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

* Default setting.



MENU Evaluate White Bal.

Custom

2 Aim the camera at a piece of white paper or cloth and press MENU.

- If you are viewing it with the LCD monitor, ensure that the center frame is completely filled with the white image. If you are using the optical viewfinder, ensure that the entire field is filled.

- You are recommended to set the shooting mode to M and the exposure compensation setting to [±0] before setting a custom white balance.
  The correct white balance may not be obtained when the exposure setting is incorrect (image appears completely black or white).
- Shoot with the same settings as when reading the white balance data. If the settings differ, the optimal white balance may not be set.
  In particular, the following should not be changed.
  - ISO Speed
  - Flash
    Setting the flash to on or off is recommended. If the flash fires when reading the white balance data with the flash set to ⚡A (auto) or ◉ (auto with red-eye reduction), make sure that you also use the flash when you shoot.
- Since the white balance data cannot be read in Stitch Assist mode, preset the white balance in another shooting mode beforehand.
- The camera will retain the custom white balance setting that you record even if you reset the camera to the default settings (p. 31).

Changing the Photo Effect

Shooting Mode

By setting a photo effect before you shoot, you can change the look and feel of the pictures you take.

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ OFF * (Effect Off).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ← or → button to select a photo effect and press the **FUNC./SET** button.

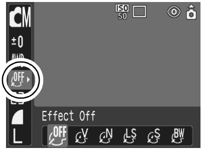


Photo Effect Settings

OFF	**Effect Off**	Records normally with this setting.
V	**Vivid**	Emphasizes the contrast and color saturation to record bold colors.
N	**Neutral**	Tones down the contrast and color saturation to record neutral hues.
LS	**Low Sharpening**	Records subjects with softened outlines.
S	**Sepia**	Records in sepia tones.
BW	**B/W**	Records in black and white.

Shooting in a My Colors Mode

Shooting Mode

A My Colors mode easily changes the colors in an image when it is shot, allowing you to alter the balance between red, green and blue, transform pale or tanned skin or change a color specified in the LCD monitor into a different color. Since they work with both stills and movies, these modes let you enjoy producing various image or movie effects.

However, depending on the shooting conditions, the images may appear rough or you may not get the expected color. Before you try to photograph important subjects, we highly recommend that you shoot trial images and check the results.

Moreover, the camera will record both the My Colors image and the original unaltered image if you set [Save Original] (p. 28) to [On].

My Colors Settings

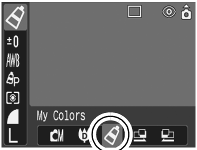
P	**Positive Film**	Use this option to make red, green or blue colors more intense like the Vivid Red, Vivid Green or Vivid Blue effects. It can produce intense natural-appearing colors like those obtained with positive film.
L	**Lighter Skin Tone***	Use this option to make skin tones lighter.
D	**Darker Skin Tone***	Use this option to make skin tones darker.
B	**Vivid Blue**	Use this option to emphasize blue tints. It makes blue subjects, such as the sky or ocean, more vivid.
G	**Vivid Green**	Use this option to emphasize green tints. It makes green subjects, such as mountains, new growth, flowers and lawns, more vivid.
R	**Vivid Red**	Use this option to emphasize red tints. It makes red subjects, such as flowers or cars, more vivid.
A	**Color Accent**	Use this option to have only the color specified in the LCD monitor remain and to transform all others to black and white.

S	**Color Swap**	Use this option to transform a color specified in the LCD monitor into another. The specified color can only be swapped into one other color, multiple colors cannot be chosen.
C	**Custom Color**	Use this option to freely adjust the color balance between red, green, blue and skin tones*. It can be used to make subtle adjustments, such as making blue colors more vivid or face colors brighter.

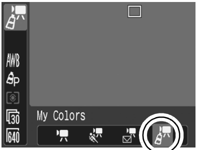
* The skin colors of non-human subjects may also be altered.
* You may not obtain the expected results depending on the skin color.

1 FUNC. Menu ▶ (My Colors: Stills)/ (My Colors: Movies).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).



Stills



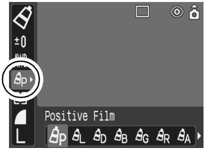
Movies

2 FUNC. Menu ▶ P* (Positive Film).

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

*Default setting.

- Use the ← or → button to select a My Colors mode.



3 Shoot.

- **P L D B G R Modes**
  Press the **FUNC./SET** button. The display will return to the shooting screen and you can shoot.
- **A S C Modes**
  A: See *Setting the Camera to the Color Accent Mode* (p. 61).
  S: See *Setting the Camera to the Color Swap Mode* (p. 62).
  C: See *Setting the Camera to a Custom Color Mode* (p. 63).

The ISO speed will rise with some settings, which may increase the "noise" in the image.

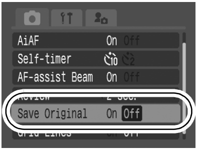
Changing the Save Method for the Original Image

When you are shooting still images in a My Colors mode, you can specify whether or not both the altered image and the original image are recorded.

1 **(Rec.) Menu ▶ [Save Original] ▶ [On]/[Off].**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).

- If [On] is selected, the two images will be numbered consecutively with the altered image following the original.



When [Save Original] is Set to [On]

- Only the altered image is shown in the LCD monitor during shooting.
- The image that appears in the LCD monitor immediately after recording is the altered image. If you erase the image at this point, the original image is erased along with the altered image.
  Exercise adequate caution before deleting a file.
- Since two images are recorded with each shot, the number of shots remaining is approximately half the number displayed when this function is set to [Off].

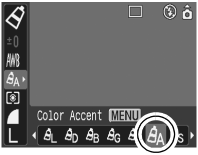
Setting the Camera to the Color Accent Mode

Colors other than the color specified in the LCD monitor are shot in black and white.

1 **(Color Accent) ▶ MENU.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

- The camera will switch to color input mode and the display will alternate between the original image and the color accent image (using the previously set color).



2 **Aim the camera so that the color you wish to retain appears at the center of the LCD monitor and press the ← button.**

- Only one color can be specified.
- You can use the ↑ or ↓ button to specify the range of colors that are retained.
  - -5: Only takes the color that you want to retain
  - +5: Also takes colors close to the one that you want to retain

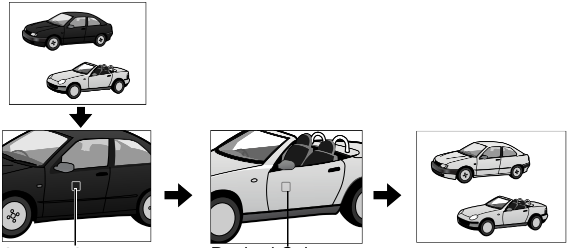
3 **FUNC. SET.**

- This completes the setting.
- If you press the **MENU** button at this point, you will return to the screen where you can select a My Colors mode.

- The default color accent is green.
- You may not obtain the expected results after color input mode if you use the flash, or change the white balance or metering settings.
- The specified color accent is retained even if the camera's power is turned off.

Setting the Camera to the Color Swap Mode

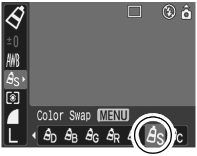
This mode allows you to transform a color specified in the LCD monitor into another.



1 **(Color Swap) ▶ MENU.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).

- The camera will switch to color input mode and the display will alternate between the original image and the color swap image (using the previously set color).



2 **Aim the camera so that the original color appears at the center of the LCD monitor and press the ← button.**

- Only one color can be specified.
- You can use the ↑ or ↓ button to specify the range of colors that are swapped.
  - -5: Only takes the color that you want to swap
  - +5: Also takes colors close to the one that you want to swap

3 **Aim the camera so that the desired color appears at the center of the LCD monitor and press the → button.**

- Only one color can be specified.

4 FUNC. SET .

- This completes the setting.
- If you press the **MENU** button at this point, you will return to the screen where you can select a My Colors mode.

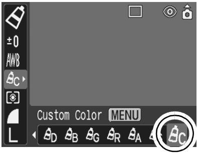
- The default setting for color swap mode changes green into white.
- You may not obtain the expected results after color input mode if you use the flash, or change the white balance or metering settings.
- The colors specified in the color swap mode are retained even if the camera's power is turned off.

Setting the Camera to a Custom Color Mode

This mode allows you to adjust the color balance for red, green, blue and skin tones.

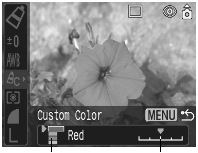
1 **(Custom Color) ▶ MENU .**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 26).



2 **Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Red], [Green], [Blue] or [Skin Tone] and the ↑ or ↓ button to adjust the color balance.**

- The altered color will display.



Select a color.

Adjust the color balance.

3 FUNC. SET .

- This completes the setting.
- If you press the **MENU** button at this point, you will return to the screen where you can select a My Colors mode.

ISO Adjusting the ISO Speed

Shooting Mode M CM

Raise the ISO speed when you wish to reduce the effects of camera shake, turn the flash off when shooting in a dark area, or use a fast shutter speed.

1 Press the ISO button and switch settings.

- Cycle through the ISO 50 / ISO 100 / ISO 200 / ISO 400 /Auto ISO speed with each press of the ISO button.
- Selecting [Auto] sets the sensitivity to produce the optimal image quality.

Setting the Auto Rotate Function

Shooting Mode 📷 📷M SCN 🎥M ☻ ✎ ▭

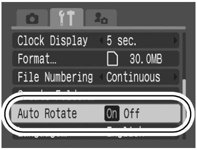
Playback Mode ▶

Your camera is equipped with an Intelligent Orientation sensor that detects the orientation of an image shot with the camera held vertically and automatically rotates it to the correct orientation when viewing it in the LCD monitor.

1 🔧 (Set up) Menu ▶ [Auto Rotate] ▶ [On]/[Off].

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).

- When the Auto Rotate function is set to [On] and the LCD monitor is set to the detailed display mode, the 📷 (normal), 📷 (right end is down) or 📷 (left end is down) will appear in the display.


Clock Display 5 sec.
Format... 30.0MB
File Numbering Continuous
Auto Rotate On Off

- This function may not operate correctly when the camera is pointed straight up or down. Check that the arrow 📷 is pointing in the right direction and if it is not, then set the Auto Rotate function to [Off].
- Even if the Auto Rotate function is set to [On], the orientation of images downloaded to a computer will depend upon the software used to download the images.

- When the camera is held vertically to shoot, the Intelligent Orientation sensor judges the upper end to be "up" and the lower end to be "down". It then regulates the optimal white balance, exposure and focus for vertical photography. This function operates regardless of the on/off status of the Auto Rotate function.
- When the Auto Rotate function is set to [On] in shooting mode, the orientation of the camera is recorded when the shot is taken.
- When the Auto Rotate function is set to [On] in playback mode, images will be rotated to their correction orientation in the LCD monitor as needed when the camera's orientation is changed (only applies to images shot when the Auto Rotate function was set to [On]).

Creating an Image Destination (Folder)

Shooting Mode

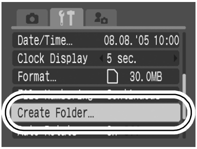
Playback Mode

You can create a new folder at any time and the recorded images will be automatically saved to that folder.

Create New Folder	Creates a new folder the next time you shoot images. To create an additional folder, insert another check mark.
Auto Create	You can also specify a date and time if you wish to create a new folder using a shooting time after the specified date and time (p. 30).

1 **(Set up) Menu ▶ [Create Folder].**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).

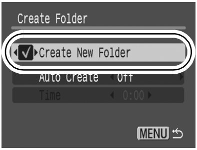


Date/Time… 08.08.'05 10:00
Clock Display 5 sec.
Format… 30.0MB
Create Folder…

Creates a folder the next time you shoot.

2 **Place a check mark beside [Create New Folder] ▶ MENU.**

- displays in the LCD monitor. The symbol will cease to display after the new folder is created.

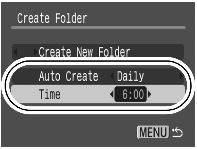


Create Folder
☑ Create New Folder
Auto Create Off
Time 0:00
MENU

Setting the Day or Time for Automatic Folder Creation

2 **Select a day for the [Auto Create] option and a time in the [Time] option ▶ MENU.**

- displays when the specified time arrives. The symbol will cease to display after the new folder is created.



Create Folder
Create New Folder
Auto Create Daily
Time 6:00
MENU

Up to 2000 images can be saved into one folder. A new folder will automatically be created when you record more than that number even if you are not creating new folders.

Resetting the File Number

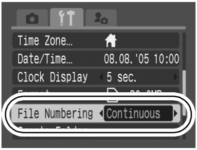
Shooting Mode

Playback Mode

The images you shoot are automatically assigned file numbers. You can select how the file number is assigned.

1 (Set up) Menu ▶ [File numbering] ▶ [Auto reset]/[Continuous].

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



Time Zone…

Date/Time… 08.08.'05 10:00

Clock Display 5 sec.

File Numbering Continuous

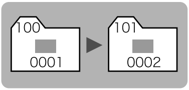
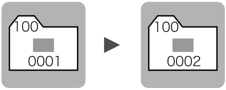
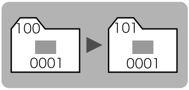
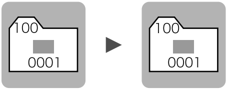
File Number Reset Function

Continuous	A number one higher than the last one recorded is assigned to the next image. This is convenient for managing all your images together on a computer because you avoid file name duplication when changing folders or memory cards.*
Auto reset	The image and folder number are reset to the starting value (100-0001).* This is convenient for managing images on a folder-by-folder basis.

*When a blank memory card is used. If a memory card with recorded data is used, the 7-digit number for the last recorded folder and image is compared with the last one on the card, and the larger of the two is utilized as the basis for new images.

File and Folder Numbers

Recorded images are assigned consecutive file numbers starting with 0001 and ranging up to 9999, while folders are assigned numbers starting with 100 and ranging up to 999. Up to 2,000 images can be saved into a single folder.

	New Folder Created	Memory Card Exchanged for Another
Continuous	Memory Card 1  	Memory Card 1 Memory Card 2 
Auto Reset	Memory Card 1  	Memory Card 1 Memory Card 2 

- Images may be saved to a new folder when there is insufficient free space even if the total number of images in a folder is less than 2,000 because the following types of image are always saved together into the same folder.
  - images from continuous shooting
  - Self-timer images (custom)
  - Stitch Assist mode images
  - My Colors images ([Save Original] set to [On])
- Images cannot be played back when the folder numbers are duplicated or image numbers are duplicated within folders.
- Please refer to the *Software Starter Guide* for information regarding folder structures or image types.

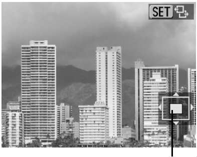
Playback/Erasing

Please also see the *Basic Camera User Guide* (p. 11).

🔍 Magnifying Images

1 Press the zoom lever toward 🔍.

- SET ⇄ will display and a magnified portion of the image will display.
- Images can be magnified up to a factor of approximately 10x.



Approximate Location of the Displayed Area

2 Use the ←, →, ↑ or ↓ button to move around the image.

- If you press the **FUNC./SET** button while in magnified display, the camera switches to image advance mode and SET ⇄ will display. You can use the ← or → button to advance to the next or previous image at the same level of magnification. The image advance mode is canceled when you press the **FUNC./SET** button again.
- You can change the magnification level with the zoom lever.

To Cancel the Magnified Display

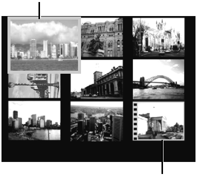
Press the zoom lever toward ▦. (You can also cancel it immediately by pressing the **MENU** button.)

> ❗ Movie frames and index playback images cannot be magnified.

▦ Viewing Images in Sets of Nine (Index Playback)

1 Press the zoom lever toward ▦.

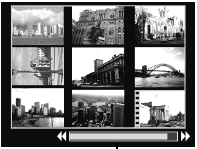
- Up to nine images can be viewed at once.
- Use the ←, →, ↑ or ↓ button to change the image selection.



Switching between Sets of Nine Images

The jump bar will display if you press the zoom lever toward ▦ while in index playback and you can switch the display between sets of nine images.

- Use the ← or → button to move to the previous or next set of 9 images.
- Hold the **FUNC./SET** button down and press the ← or → button to jump to the first or last set.



To Return to Single Image Playback

Press the zoom lever toward 🔍.

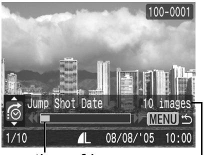
Jumping to Images

When you have many images recorded onto a memory card, it is handy to use the five search keys below to jump over images to find the object of your search.

10	**Jump 10 Images**	Jumps over 10 images at a time.
100	**Jump 100 Images**	Jumps over 100 images at a time.
	Jump Shot Date	Jumps to the first image of each shooting date.
	Jump to Movie	Jumps to a movie.
	Jump to Folder	Displays the first image in each folder.

1 In single image playback mode, press the button.

- The camera will switch to jump search mode.
- The screen sample will vary slightly according to the search key.



Location of image currently being displayed.

Number of images matching search key.

2 Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a search key and press the ← or → button.

To Return to Single Image Playback

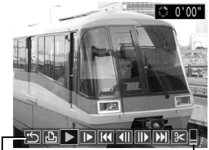
Press the **MENU** button.

Viewing Movies

Movies cannot be played in the index playback mode.

1 Display a movie and press (FUNC. SET).

- Images with a SET 🎥 icon are movies.



Movie Control Panel

Volume Level (Adjust it with the ▲ or ▼ button)

2 Select ▶ (Play) and press (FUNC. SET).

- The movie will pause if you press the **FUNC./SET** button during playback. It will resume when you press the button again.
- When playback ends, the movie stops at the last frame displayed. Press the **FUNC./SET** button to display the movie control panel.

Operating the Movie Control Panel

⮌	Ends playback and returns to single image playback
⎙	Print (An icon will display when a printer is connected. See the *Direct Print User Guide* for details.)
▶	Play
|▶	Slow Motion Playback (You can use the ◀ button to slow down or the ▶ button to speed up playback.)
⏮	Displays the first frame
◀||	Previous Frame (Rewinds if the **FUNC./SET** button is held down)
||▶	Next Frame (Fast Forwards if the **FUNC./SET** button is held down)
⏭	Displays the last frame
✂	Edit (Switches to movie editing mode) (p. 73)

- Use the television's controls to adjust the volume when playing a movie on a TV set (p. 89).
- The sound cannot be played in slow motion playback.

Editing Movies

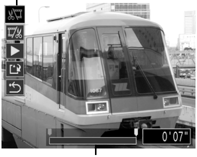
You can delete portions of recorded movies.

Movies 1 second or longer before editing can be edited in 1-second increments, but those that are protected or less than 1 second long cannot be edited.

1 Select ✂ (Edit) in the movie control panel and press FUNC./SET.

- The movie editing panel and the movie editing bar will display.

Movie Editing Panel



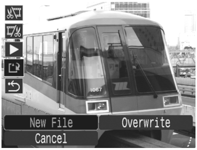
Movie Editing Bar

2 Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select ✂ (Cut Beginning) or ✂ (Cut End) and the ← or → button to specify the cut point(▮).

- To check a temporarily edited movie, select ▶ (Play) and press the **FUNC./SET** button.
- Selecting ↶ (Exit) cancels the edit and restores the movie control panel.

3 Select 💾 (Save) and press FUNC./SET.

4 Select [New File] or [Overwrite] and press FUNC. SET.

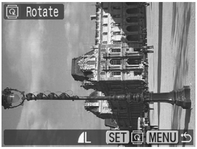


- [New File] saves the edited movie under a new file name. The pre-edit data is left unchanged. Note, if you press the **FUNC./SET** button while saving the movie, saving is canceled.
- [Overwrite] saves the edited movie with its original name. The pre-edit data is lost.
- When there is not enough space left on the memory card, only [Overwrite] can be selected.

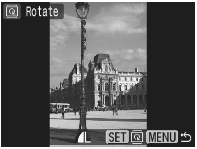
It may take approximately 3 minutes to save an edited movie. If the battery runs out of charge partway through, edited movie clips cannot be saved. When editing movies, it is recommended to use a fully charged battery or the separately sold AC Adapter Kit ACK900 (p. 109).

Rotating Images in the Display

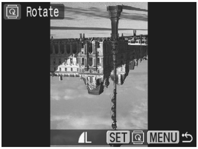
Images can be rotated clockwise 90° or 270° in the display.


Rotate
L
SET
MENU

Original


Rotate
L
SET
MENU

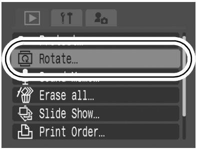
90°


Rotate
L
SET
MENU

270°

1 ▶ (Play) Menu ▶ ⟲.

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).


Rotate...
Erase all...
Slide Show...
Print Order...

2 Use the ← or → button to select an image to rotate and press FUNC./SET to rotate it.

- Cycle through the 90°/270°/original orientations with each press of the **FUNC./SET** button.
- This also can be set in the index playback mode.

❗

- Movies cannot be rotated.
- When images are downloaded to a computer, the orientation of images rotated by the camera will depend upon the software used to download the images.

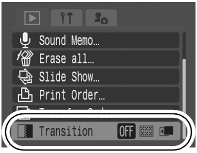
Playback with Transition Effects

You can select the transition effect displayed when switching between images.

▦	The displayed image darkens and the next image gradually brightens until it is displayed.
◧	Press the ◀ button to have the previous image display from the left and the ▶ button to have the next image display from the right.

1 **▶ (Play) Menu ▶ ◨ ▶ ▦/◧.**

See Menus and Settings (p. 27).


Sound Memo...
Erase all...
Slide Show...
Print Order...
Transition OFF

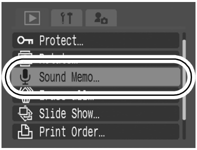
The transition effect will not display when an image is switched while the camera is reading of an image from the memory card.

Attaching Sound Memos to Images

In playback mode (including single image playback and index playback), you can attach sound memos (up to 60 seconds) to an image. The sound data is saved in the WAVE format.

1 **▶ (Play) Menu ▶ 🎙.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).

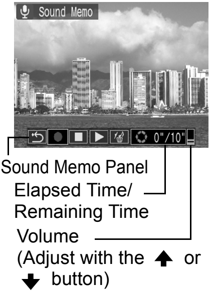

Protect...
Sound Memo...
Slide Show...
Print Order...

2 Use the ← or → button to select an image to attach a sound memo to and press FUNC. SET.

- The sound memo control panel will display.

3 Select ○ (Record) and press FUNC. SET.

- The elapsed time and the remaining time display.
- Pressing the **FUNC./SET** button pauses the recording. Pressing it again resumes recording.
- Up to 60 seconds of recordings can be added to any one image.


Sound Memo
0"/10"
Sound Memo Panel
Elapsed Time/ Remaining Time
Volume (Adjust with the ↑ or ↓ button)

Sound Memo Panel

↩	Exit
●	Record
■	Pause
▶	Play
🗑	Erase Select [Erase] in the confirmation screen and press the **FUNC./SET** button.

- You cannot attach sound memos to movies.
- Sound memos for protected images cannot be erased.

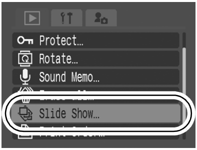
Automated Playback (Slide Shows)

Automated Playback of Memory Card Images.
Image settings for slide shows are based on the Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) standard (p. 83).

❏	**All Images**	Plays all images on a memory card in order.
▦	**Date**	Plays images bearing a specified date in order.
🗀	**Folder**	Plays images in a specified folder in order.
🎥	**Movies**	Plays movie files only, in order.
📷	**Stills**	Plays still images only, in order.
★1 – ★3	**Custom 1–3**	Plays the images selected for each slide show, Custom 1, Custom 2 or Custom 3, in order (p. 80).

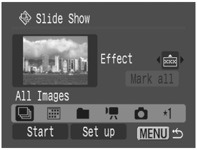
1 ▶ (Play) Menu ▶ ⎘.

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).

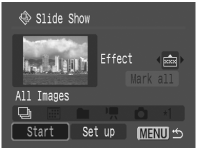

Protect...
Rotate...
Sound Memo...
Slide Show...

2 Select ❏, ▦, 🗀, 🎥, 📷 or ★1–★3.

- For ▦ or 🗀, select the image date or folder to be played back (p. 80).
- For ★1, ★2 or ★3, select the images to be played back (p. 80).
- If you want to add a transition effect to play back images, use the ↑ button to select [Effect] and choose the type of effect with the ← or → button (See the next page).


Slide Show
Effect
Mark all
All Images
★1
Start
Set up
MENU ↩

3 Select [Start] and press FUNC. SET.



- The following functions are available during slide shows.
  - Pausing/resuming the slide show: press the **FUNC./SET** button
  - Fast forwarding/rewinding the slide show: press the ← or → button (continue to hold the button to switch between images more rapidly)
  - Stopping the slide show: press the **MENU** button.

Transition Effects

You can select the transition effect used when one image is replaced by another.

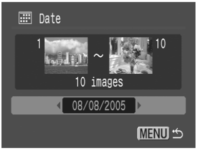
▦	The new image gradually brightens as it moves upward from the bottom.
✚	The new image first appears in a cross shape and gradually expands to display the full image.
▬	Portions of the new image move horizontally, then the image expands to display the full image.

In single image playback mode, you can start a slide show from the current image displayed by holding the **FUNC./SET** button while you press the ⎙∿ button. Please note that if you do this while the last image shot is displayed, the slide show will start from the first image using the same date.

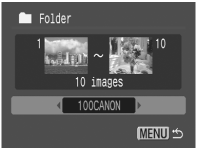
Selecting an Image Date or Folder for Playback (▦/▭)

1 **Select ▦ or ▭ and press FUNC./SET.**

2 **Use the ← or → button to select the date or folder to be played back and press MENU.**



Date



Folder

Selecting Images for Playback (★1–★3)

Select only the images that you wish to play back and save them as a slide show (Custom 1, 2 or 3). Up to 998 images can be selected. They will be played back in their order of selection.

1 **Select ★1, ★2 or ★3 and press FUNC./SET.**

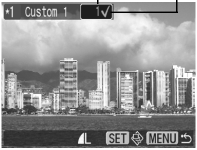
- Only the ★1 icon will display at first. When you set ★1, the icon will change to ★1✓ and ★2 will display. ★2 and ★3 will change in the same way when they are set.

2 **Use the ← or → button to move between images for playback and the FUNC./SET button to select or deselect them.**

- You can also select images in the index playback mode.
- Pressing the **MENU** button cancels the setting.

Check mark indicating selection

Number indicating the selection order



Selecting All Images

1 After selecting ★1–★3 in step 1 (p. 80), use the ⬆ button to select [Mark all] and press the **FUNC./SET** button.
2 Use the ⬆ button to select [Mark all], press the **FUNC./SET** button.
3 Use the ➡ button to select [OK] and press the **FUNC./SET** button.

To deselect all images, select [Reset].

Adjusting the Play Time and Repeat Settings

● **Play Time**

Sets the duration that each image displays. Choose between 3–10 seconds, 15 seconds and 30 seconds. Displaying time can vary slightly depending on the image.

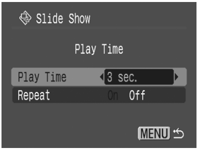
● **Repeat**

Sets whether the slide show stops when all the slides have been displayed or continues until stopped.

1 Select [Set up] and press FUNC./SET.

2 Select [Play Time] or [Repeat] and then the desired option.

● Pressing the **MENU** button cancels the setting.



Slide Show

Play Time

Play Time ◀ 3 sec. ▶

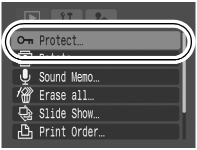
Repeat On Off

Protecting Images

You can protect important images and movies from accidental erasure.

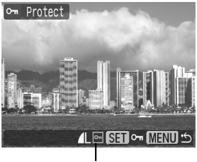
1 **▶ (Play) Menu ▶ ⊶.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).


Protect...
Sound Memo...
Erase all...
Slide Show...
Print Order...

2 **Select an image to protect and press FUNC. SET.**

- Pressing the **FUNC./SET** button again cancels the setting.
- You can also protect images in the index playback mode.


Protect
L
SET
MENU

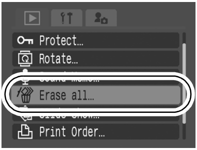
Protection Icon

Erasing All Images

- Note that erased images cannot be recovered. Exercise adequate caution before erasing an image.
- Protected images cannot be erased with this function.

1 **▶ (Play) Menu ▶ 🗑.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).


Protect...
Rotate...
Erase all...
Print Order...

2 **Select [OK] and press FUNC. SET.**

- To exit instead of erasing, select [Cancel].

Please format the memory card when you want to erase not only image data but also all the data contained on the card (p. 23).

Print Settings/Transfer Settings

Setting the DPOF Print Settings

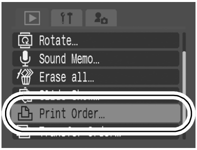
You can select images on a memory card for printing and specify the number of print copies in advance using the camera. This is extremely convenient for printing on a direct print compatible printer, or for sending the images to a photo developing service that supports DPOF.

The ⚠ icon may display for a memory card with print settings set by a different DPOF-compliant camera. These settings will be overwritten by those set by your camera.

Single Images

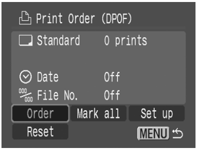
1 **▶ (Play) Menu ▶ 🖶.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



2 **Select [Order] and press (FUNC. SET).**

- Selecting [Reset] cancels all print settings for the images.


Print Order (DPOF)

Standard 0 prints

Date Off

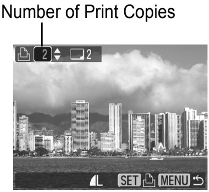
File No. Off

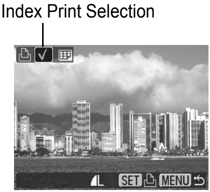
3 Select images for printing.

- Selection methods differ for the Print Type settings (p. 85).
  - **■ (Standard)/■▦ (Both)**

    Select an image, press the **FUNC./SET** button and use the ↑ or ↓ button to select the number of print copies (up to maximum of 99).
  - **▦ (Index)**

    Select an image and the press **FUNC./SET** button to select or deselect it.
- You can also select images in the index playback mode.

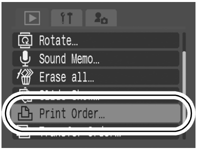

Number of Print Copies
2
2
L
SET
MENU


Index Print Selection
✓
L
SET
MENU

All the Images on a Memory Card

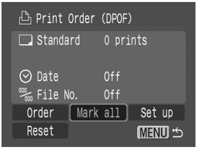
1 ▶ (Play) Menu ▶ 🖶.

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).


Rotate...
Sound Memo...
Erase all...
Slide Show...
Print Order...
Transfer Order...

2 Select [Mark all] and press FUNC. SET.

- Selecting [Reset] cancels all print settings for the images.
- One copy of every image will be set to print.


Print Order (DPOF)

Standard 0 prints

Date Off

File No. Off

Order
Mark all
Set up
Reset
MENU

3 Select [OK] and press FUNC. SET.

- The output of some printers or photo developing services may not reflect the specified print settings.
- Print settings cannot be set for movies.

- Images are printed in order according to the file number.
- A maximum of 998 images can be selected.
- When [Print Type] is set to [Both], the number of copies can be set. When it is set to [Index], the number of copies cannot be set (only one copy will be printed).
- Do not set the date in the DPOF print settings when printing images that have had the date embedded with the [Date Stamp] function. This may cause the date to be printed twice.

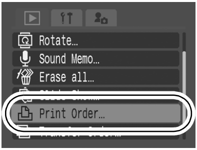
Setting the Print Style

Set the print style after selecting the image to print. The following print settings can be selected.

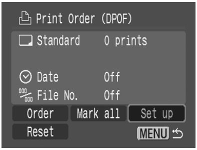
Print Type	**Standard**	Prints one image per page.
	Index	Prints the selected images together at a reduced size in an index format.
	Both	Prints the images in both the standard and index formats.
Date		Adds the date to the print.
File No.		Adds the file number to the print.

1 ▶ (Play) Menu ▶ 🖶.

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



2 Select [Set up] and press FUNC. SET.



Print Order (DPOF)

Standard 0 prints

Date Off

File No. Off

3 Select [Print Type], [Date] or [File No.] and then specify the settings.

- The Date and File No. settings change according to the Print Type as follows.
  - Index
    [Date] and [File No.] cannot be set to [On] at the same time.
  - Standard or Both
    [Date] and [File No.] can be set to [On] at the same time, however, the printable information may vary between printers.
- Embedded dates in (Postcard Date Imprint mode) (p. 39) print out even when [Date] is set to [Off].
- Dates print in the style specified in the [Date/Time] menu (p. 30).

Setting the DPOF Transfer Settings

You can use the camera to specify settings for images before downloading to a computer. Refer to the *Software Starter Guide* for instructions on how to transfer images to your computer.

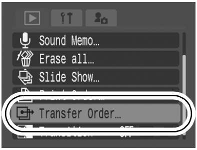
The settings used on the camera comply with the Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) standards.

The ⚠ icon may display for a memory card with transfer settings set by a different DPOF-compliant camera. These settings will be overwritten by those set by your camera.

Single Images

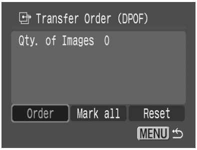
1 ▶ (Play) Menu ▶ ⎘.

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).


Sound Memo…
Erase all…
Slide Show…
Transfer Order…

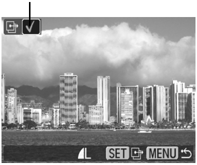
2 Select [Order] and press FUNC./SET.

- Selecting [Reset] cancels all transfer order settings.


Transfer Order (DPOF)
Qty. of Images 0
Order
Mark all
Reset
MENU

3 Select an image to transfer and press FUNC./SET.

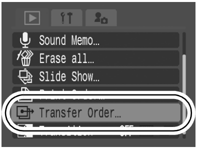
- Pressing the **FUNC./SET** button again deselects the setting.
- You can also select images in the index playback mode.


Transfer Selection

All the Images on a Memory Card

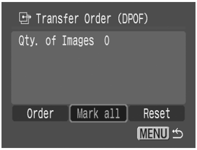
1 **(Play) Menu ▶ .**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).


Sound Memo…
Erase all…
Slide Show…
Transfer Order…

2 **Select [Mark all] and press FUNC. SET.**

- Selecting [Reset] cancels all transfer order settings.


Transfer Order (DPOF)

Qty. of Images 0
Order
Mark all
Reset
MENU

3 **Select [OK] and press FUNC. SET.**

- Images are transferred in order according to the file number.
- A maximum of 998 images can be selected.

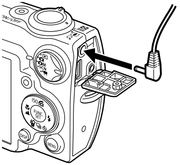
Viewing Images on a TV set

You can use a video-compatible television as a monitor to shoot or play back images when it is connected to the camera with the supplied AV Cable.

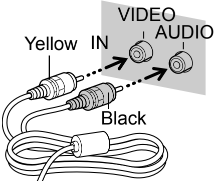
1 Turn off the Camera and the TV.

2 Connect the AV cable to the camera's A/V OUT terminal.

- Open the terminal cover by slipping a fingernail under the lower edge and plug the AV cable in all the way.



3 Plug the other ends of the AV cable to the VIDEO IN and AUDIO IN jacks on the TV.



4 Turn on the TV and switch it to Video mode.

5 Turn on the camera.

The video output signal can be switched (NTSC or PAL) to accommodate different regional standards (p. 30). The default setting varies between regions.
- NTSC: Japan, U.S.A., Canada, Taiwan and others
- PAL: Europe, Asia (excluding Taiwan), Oceania and others

If the video system is set incorrectly, the camera output may not display properly.

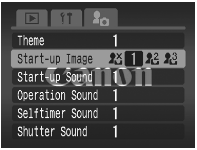
Customizing the Camera (My Camera Settings)

My Camera allows you to customize the start-up image and start-up, operation, self-timer and shutter sounds. You can change and register these settings, enabling you to customize the camera to suit your own tastes.

Changing My Camera Settings

1 (My Camera) Menu ▶ Menu Item.

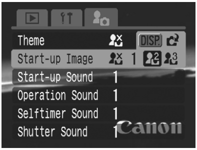
See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



Theme 1
Start-up Image 1
Start-up Sound 1
Operation Sound 1
Selftimer Sound 1
Shutter Sound 1

2 Select the contents you wish to set.

- Select [Theme] to set all to the same settings.



Theme
Start-up Image 1
Start-up Sound 1
Operation Sound 1
Selftimer Sound 1
Shutter Sound 1

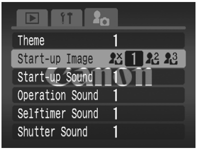
Registering My Camera Settings

Images recorded onto the memory card and newly recorded sounds can be added as My Camera settings to the 2 and 3 menu items. You can also use the supplied software to upload your computer's images and sounds to the camera.

A computer is required to restore the My Camera settings to the defaults. Use the supplied software (ZoomBrowser EX/ ImageBrowser) to restore the default settings to the camera.

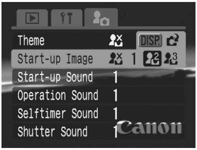
1 **Set the mode dial to ▶ (playback) ▶ (My Camera) Menu ▶ Menu Item to register.**

See *Menus and Settings* (p. 27).



Theme 1
Start-up Image 1
Start-up Sound 1
Operation Sound 1
Selftimer Sound 1
Shutter Sound 1

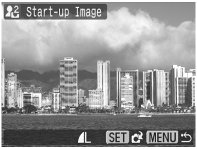
2 **Select 2 or 3 and press DISP.**

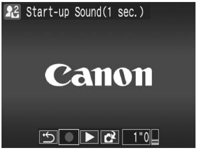


Theme
Start-up Image 1
Start-up Sound 1
Operation Sound 1
Selftimer Sound 1
Shutter Sound 1

3 Select an image or record a sound.

- **Start-up Image**
  Select the image you wish to register and press the **FUNC./SET** button.

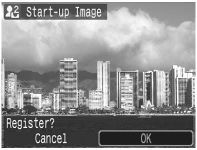

Start-up Image
L
SET
MENU


Start-up Sound(1 sec.)
Canon
1"0

- **Start-up, Operation, Self-timer and Shutter Sounds**
  Select ○ (Record) and press the **FUNC./SET** button. After recording, select (Register) and press the **FUNC./SET** button.
  - Recording will automatically stop when the recording time elapses.
  - To play it, select ▶ (Play).
  - To exit instead of registering, press ↩ (Exit).

4 Select [OK] and press (FUNC. SET).

- To cancel registering, select [Cancel].


Start-up Image
Register?
Cancel
OK

- The following cannot be registered as My Camera settings.
  - Movies
  - Sounds recorded with the sound memo function (p. 76)
- The prior setting is erased when a new My Camera setting is added.

See the supplied *Software Starter Guide* for more information on creating and adding to the My Camera data.

Troubleshooting

Camera

Camera will not operate.	
Power is not turned on.	●Press the power button (*Basic Guide* p. 5).
Memory card slot/battery cover is open.	●Confirm that the memory card slot/ battery cover is securely closed (*Basic Guide* p. 2).
Insufficient battery voltage ("Change the battery pack" message displays).	●Insert a fully charged battery into the camera (*Basic Guide* p. 2). ●Use the AC Adapter Kit ACK900 (sold separately) (p. 109).
Poor contact between camera and battery terminals.	●Polish the terminals with a soft cotton swab before charging or using the battery (p. 105).
Sounds come from the camera interior.	
The camera's horizontal/ vertical orientation was changed.	●The camera's orientation mechanism is operating. There is no malfunction.

When the power is turned on

"Card locked!" message appears.	
The SD memory card's write protect tab is set to "Write protect".	●When recording to, erasing from or formatting the SD memory card, slide the tab upward (p. 107).
The Date/Time menu appears.	
The built-in rechargeable lithium battery charge is low.	●Replace it at once with a charged battery (*Basic Guide* p. 4).

LCD monitor

The display darkens.	
The image in the LCD monitor will darken in strong sunlight or bright light.	●This does not constitute a malfunction and has no effect on images that have been shot.
Display flickers.	
Display flickers when shot under fluorescent lighting.	●This is not a camera malfunction (flickering recorded in movies, but not in still images).
A bar of light (red, purple) appears on the LCD monitor.	
Subject is too bright.	●This is a normal occurrence in devices containing CCDs and does not constitute a malfunction. This bar of light will not be recorded when shooting still photos, but it will be recorded when shooting movies.
📷 appears.	
A slow shutter speed has likely been selected because of insufficient lighting.	●Raise the ISO speed (p. 64) or set the flash to any setting other than ⊘ (flash off), or secure the camera to something, such as a tripod (*Basic Guide* p. 9).
⚠ appears.	
This displays when using a memory card that has print settings, transfer settings or slide show image selections set by other DPOF-compliant cameras.	●These settings will be overwritten by those set by your camera (p. 83).

Noise displays./Subject's movements are irregular.

Camera automatically lightened the image displayed on the LCD monitor to make it easier to see when shooting in a dark area (p. 17).	● There is no effect on the recorded image.

Shooting

Camera will not record.

Mode dial is set to ▶ (playback).	● Set the mode dial to 📷, 📷M, SCN or 🎥 (*Basic Guide* p. 6).
Flash is charging.	● The indicator will light orange when it is charged. You can then press the shutter button (p. 22).
Memory card is full.	● Insert a new memory card (*Basic Guide* p. 2). ● If required, download the images to a computer and erase them from the memory card to make space (p. 82, *Basic Guide* p. 21).
Memory card is not formatted correctly.	● Format the memory card (p. 23). ● If reformatting does not work, the memory card logic circuits may be damaged. Consult the nearest Canon Customer Support Help Desk.
SD memory card is write protected.	● Slide the write protect tab of the SD memory card upward (p. 107).

Image Seen in Viewfinder vs. Recorded Image

Usually the recorded image contains more of the scene than is seen in the viewfinder.	● Confirm the actual image size with the LCD monitor. Use the LCD monitor when taking close-up shots (p. 15).

Image is blurred or out of focus.

AF-assist Beam is set to [Off].	●In dark places where it is difficult for the camera to focus, the AF-assist Beam will emit to assist focusing. As the AF-assist Beam will not function when turned off, set it [On] to activate it (p. 28). Take care not to obstruct the AF-assist Beam with your hand when used.
The camera moves when the shutter button is pressed.	●Setting the self-timer to ⏲2 (2 seconds) delays the shutter release for 2 seconds and allows the camera to stop shaking, thus preventing a blurred image (p. 40). Even better results can be obtained by placing the camera on a stable surface or by using a tripod to shoot.
Subject is out of focal range.	●Shoot with the subject at the correct shooting distance (p. 113). ●Use the Infinity mode to shoot distant subjects (*Basic Guide* p. 10).
The subject is hard to focus on.	●Use the focus lock or AF lock to shoot (p. 47).

Subject in recorded image is too dark.

Insufficient light for shooting.	●Set the flash to ⚡ (flash on) (*Basic Guide* p. 9).
Subject is dark in contrast to the background.	●Set the exposure compensation to a positive (+) setting (p. 51). ●Use AE lock or use the spot metering function (p. 48, 50).
Subject is too far away for flash to reach.	●Shoot within correct shooting distance of the subject when using the built-in flash (p. 114). ●Raise the ISO sensitivity and then shoot (p. 64).

Subject in recorded image is too bright.

Subject is too close, making the flash too strong.	● Shoot within correct shooting distance of the subject when using the built-in flash (p. 114).
Subject is bright in contrast to the background.	● Set the exposure compensation to a negative (-) setting (p. 51). ● Use AE lock or use the spot metering function (p. 48, 50).
Too much light is shining directly into the camera, or is being reflected off the subject.	● Change the shooting angle.
Flash is set to on.	● Set the flash to (flash off) (*Basic Guide* p. 9).

Image flashes white. Image contains noise.

ISO speed is too high.	● Higher ISO speeds increase image noise. To take clean images, use as low an ISO speed as possible (p. 64). ● In , , , and modes, the ISO speed increases and noise can appear.

White dots appear on the image.

Light from the flash has reflected off dust particles or insects in the air. This is particularly noticeable when shooting using the wide angle.	● This is a phenomenon that occurs with digital cameras and does not constitute a malfunction.

Eyes appear red.

Light reflecting back from eyes can make them appear red when the flash is used in dark areas.	● Use the ◉ (auto with red-eye reduction) mode (*Basic Guide* p. 9). For this mode to be effective, the subject must be looking right at the red-eye reduction lamp. Try asking them to look directly at the lamp. ● Even better results can be obtained by increasing the lighting in indoor settings or approaching closer to the subject. The shutter will not activate for approximately 1 second after the red-eye reduction lamp fires in order to improve the effect.

Continuous shooting slows down.

The memory card's performance has dropped.	● To enhance the continuous shooting performance, you are recommended to format the memory card in the camera after you save all its images to your computer (p. 23, *Basic Guide* p. 21).

Recording images to memory card takes a long time.

Memory card was formatted in another device.	● Use a memory card formatted in your camera (p. 23).

Lens will not retract.

Memory card slot/battery cover was opened with power on.	● First close the memory card slot/ battery cover and then turn the power off (*Basic Guide* p. 2).

Shooting Movies

The recording time may not display properly or filming may stop unexpectedly.

The following types of memory cards are used. - Slow recording cards. - Cards formatted on a different camera or a computer. - Cards which have had images recorded and erased repeatedly.	●Although the recording time may not display properly during shooting, the movie will be recorded correctly on the memory card. Recording time will display properly if you format the memory card in this camera (excluding slow recording memory cards) (p. 23).

"!" displays frequently in the LCD monitor.

If free space in the camera's built-in memory becomes too scarce, the "!" symbol will display on the LCD monitor in red and the camera will automatically cease filming shortly thereafter.	● Try the following procedures. - Reformat the memory card before filming (p. 23). - Lower the resolution or frame rate (p. 34). - Use a high-speed memory card (SDC-512MSH, etc.).

Zoom does not operate.

Zoom lever was pressed while shooting in movie mode.	●Operate the zoom before shooting in movie mode (*Basic Guide* p. 8). Note the digital zoom is available while shooting, but only in Standard movie mode (p. 37).

Playback

Cannot play back.

You attempted to play back images shot with another camera or images edited with a computer.	● Computer images that cannot be played back will play back if they are added to the camera using the supplied software program ZoomBrowser EX or ImageBrowser.
File name was changed with a computer or file location was changed.	● Set the file name or location on the file format/structure of the camera. (Refer to the *Software Starter Guide* for details).

Movies cannot be edited.

Some movies shot with another camera cannot be edited.

Movies do not play back correctly.

Movies recorded with high resolutions and frame rates may momentarily stop playing if played on slow reading memory cards.

You may experience frame dropping and audio breakup when playing back a movie on a computer with insufficient system resources.

Movies recorded at the Fast Frame Rate setting and with the video signal set to the PAL format, may play back with a frame rate lower than the recorded one when output to a TV or video. You can play every frame by using the slow motion playback.	● To check the images at the original frame rate, you are recommended to play the movie back on the camera's LCD monitor or on a computer.

Reading images from memory card is slow.	
Memory card was formatted in another device.	●Use a memory card formatted in your camera (p. 23).

Battery/Battery Charger

Battery consumed quickly.	
Battery life exceeded if battery loses its charge quickly at normal temperature (23 °C/73 °F).	●Replace the battery with a new one (*Basic Guide* p. 2).
Battery will not charge.	
Battery life exceeded.	●Replace the battery with a new one (*Basic Guide* p. 2).

TV monitor output

Image not showing on TV monitor.	
Incorrect video system setting.	●Set the video system to the appropriate setting, NTSC or PAL, for your TV (p. 30).
Shooting in Stitch Assist mode.	●The output will not appear on a TV in Stitch Assist mode. Cancel the Stitch Assist mode (*Basic Guide* p. 6).

List of Messages

The following messages may appear on the LCD monitor during shooting or playback. Please refer to the *Direct Print User Guide* for the messages that display during a printer connection.

Busy...

- Image is being recorded to, or read from, memory card. The playback mode is starting up.

No memory card

- You turned on the camera without a memory card installed.

Card locked!

- The SD memory card is write-protected.

Cannot record

- You attempted to shoot an image without a memory card installed, or attempted to attach a sound memo to a movie.

Memory card error

- Memory card has experienced an anomaly.

Memory card full

- Memory card is full of images and no more can be recorded or saved. Or no more image settings or sound memos can be recorded.

Naming error!

- The image could not be created because there is an image with the same name as the directory that the camera is attempting to create, or the highest possible file number has already been reached. In the Set up menu, set the File Numbering option to [Auto Reset]. Save all the images you wish to retain onto a computer, then reformat the memory card. Please note that formatting will erase all the existing images and other data.

Change the battery pack.

- Battery charge is insufficient to operate the camera. Replace it at once with a charged one or recharge the battery.

No image.

- No images recorded on memory card.

Image too large.

- You attempted to play back an image larger than 4992 x 3328 pixels or with a large data size.

Incompatible JPEG format.

- You attempted to play back an incompatible JPEG image.

Corrupted Data.

- You attempted to play back an image with corrupted data.

RAW

- You attempted to play back a RAW image.

Unidentified Image

- You attempted to play back an image that was recorded in a special data type (proprietary data type used by the camera of another manufacturer, etc.) or a movie clip recorded by another camera.

Cannot magnify!

- You attempted to magnify an image recorded in a different camera or data type, an image edited with a computer, or a movie.

Cannot rotate

- You attempted to rotate an image recorded in a different camera or data type, an image edited with a computer, or a movie.

Incompatible WAVE format.

- A sound memo cannot be added to this image since the data type of the existing sound memo is incorrect.

Cannot register this image!

- You attempted to register an image recorded in a different camera or a movie as a start-up image.

Protected!

- You attempted to erase or edit a protected image, movie or sound memo.

Too many marks.

- Too many images have been marked with print settings, transfer settings or slide show settings. Cannot process any more.

Cannot complete!

- Could not save the print, transfer or slide show settings.

Unselectable image.

- You attempted to set the print settings for a non-JPEG image.

Exx

- (xx: number) Camera malfunction. Turn the power off and then back on, then shoot or play back. A problem exists if the error code reappears. Note the number and contact your Canon Customer Support Help Desk. If an error code displays directly after taking a picture, the shot may not have been recorded. Check image in playback mode.

Appendix

Battery Handling

Battery Charge

The following icon and message will display.

🔋

Battery charge is low. Recharge it as soon as possible it will be used for an extended period.

Change the battery pack

Battery charge is insufficient to operate the camera. Replace the battery immediately.

Battery Handling Precautions

- **Keep the battery terminals ⊕Ⓣ⊖ clean at all times.**
  Dirty terminals may cause poor contact between the battery and camera. Polish the terminals with a soft cotton swab before charging or using the battery.
- **At low temperatures, battery performance may be reduced and the low battery icon (🔋) may appear earlier than usual.**
  Under these conditions, revive the battery by warming it in a pocket immediately before use.
- **However, ensure that there are no metallic items in the pocket that could cause a short circuit, such as a key ring, etc.**
  The battery may be short circuiting.
- **Do not allow any metal objects such as key rings to touch the (⊕) and (⊖) terminals (Fig. A). To carry the battery or store it during periods of disuse, always replace the terminal cover (Fig. B).**
  These conditions can damage the battery.

Fig. A

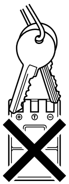
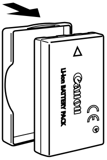


Fig. B



- **You are recommended to use it in the camera until it is completely discharged and to store it in an indoor location with low relative humidity and between the temperatures of 0 – 30 °C (32 – 86 °F).**

  Storing a fully charged battery for long periods of time (about one year) may shorten its life cycle or affect its performance. If you do not use the battery for long periods of time, charge it fully and discharge it fully in the camera about once a year before returning it to storage.

Charging the Battery

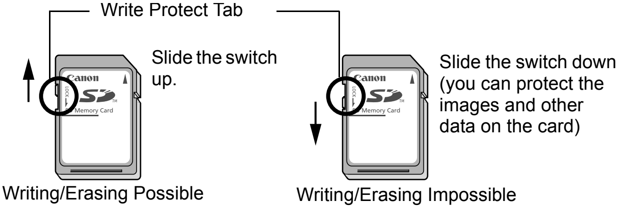
- **Since this is a lithium-ion battery, you need not completely discharge it before recharging.**

  It can be recharged at any point.
- **It takes approximately 95 minutes to fully charge the battery from a fully discharged state (based on Canon's testing standards).**
  - Charging it within a temperature range of 5 – 40 °C (41 – 104 °F) is recommended.
  - Charge times may vary according to the ambient temperature and the battery's charge state.
- **You are advised to charge the battery on the day of use, or one day before, to ensure a full charge.**

  Even charged batteries continue to discharge naturally.
- **If the performance of the battery diminishes substantially even when it is fully charged, its life has been exceeded and it should be replaced.**

Handling the Memory Card

Write Protect Tab


Write Protect Tab
Slide the switch up.
Slide the switch down (you can protect the images and other data on the card)
Writing/Erasing Possible
Writing/Erasing Impossible

Cautions When Handling

- **Memory cards are high-precision electronic devices. Do not bend them, apply force to them, or subject them to shocks or vibration.**
- **Do not attempt to disassemble or alter the memory card.**
- **Do not allow dirt, water or foreign objects to contact the terminals on the back of the card. Do not touch the terminals with your hands or metal objects.**
- **Do not peel away the original label on the memory card or cover it with another label or sticker.**
- **When writing on the memory card, do not use a pencil or ball-point pen. Only use a soft point pen (e.g. felt-tip pen).**
- **Do not use or store memory cards in the following locations.**
  - Locations subject to dust or sand
  - Locations subject to high humidity and high temperatures
- **Since some or all of the data recorded on the memory card may be corrupted or erased by electrical noise, static electricity or card malfunction, making a backup copy of important data is recommended.**

Formatting

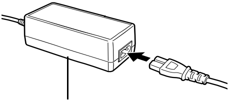
- **Please note that formatting (initializing) an memory card erases all data, including protected images.**
- **You are recommended to use memory cards that have been formatted in your camera.**
  - The card supplied with the camera may be used without further formatting.
  - When the camera is malfunctioning, a corrupted memory card might be the cause. Reformatting the memory card may solve the problem.
  - When a non-Canon brand memory card is malfunctioning, reformatting it may solve the problem.
  - Memory cards formatted in other cameras, computers, or peripheral devices may not operate correctly in this camera. When that happens, reformat the memory card with this camera.
- **If formatting in the camera does not work properly, turn the camera off and re-insert the memory card. Then turn the camera back on and format again.**

Using an AC Adapter Kit (Sold Separately)

It is best to power the camera with AC Adapter Kit ACK900 (sold separately) when you are using it for long periods of time or connecting it to a computer.

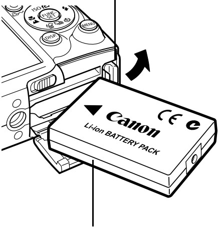
Turn the camera power off before connecting or disconnecting the AC adapter.

1 **Connect the power cord to the compact power adapter first and then plug the other end into the power outlet.**

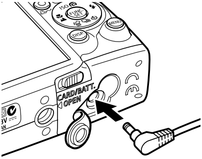

Compact Power Adapter
CA-PS500

2 **Open the memory card slot/battery cover, then insert the DC coupler until it is locked.**

- Slide the memory card slot/battery cover closed.


Battery Lock
Canon
Li-ion BATTERY PACK
DC Coupler DR-900

3 **Open the DC coupler terminal cover and attach the cord to the DC terminal.**

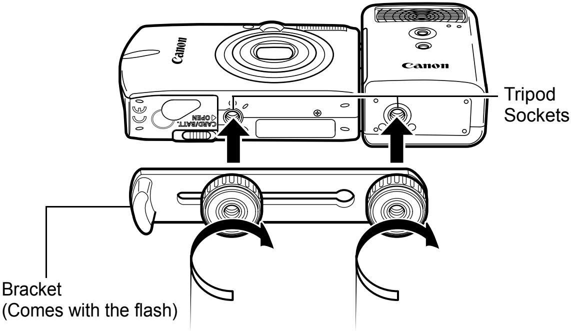

CARD/BATT.
OPEN

Using an Externally Mounted Flash (Sold Separately)

High-Power Flash HF-DC1

This flash is used to supplement the camera's built-in flash when the subject is too far away for proper illumination. Use the following procedures to affix the camera and High-Power Flash to the supporting bracket.

Please read the instructions accompanying the flash along with this explanation.



- The flash charge time will lengthen as the battery charge gets weaker. Always set the power/mode switch to [OFF] when you finish using the flash.
- Be careful not to touch the flash window or sensor windows with your fingers while the flash is in use.
- The flash may fire if another flash is being used in close proximity.
- The High-Power Flash may not fire outdoors in daylight or when there are no reflective items.
- For continuous shooting, although the flash fires for the first shot, it does not fire for subsequent shots.
- Fasten the attachment screws securely so that they do not loosen. Failure to do so may lead to the dropping of the camera and flash resulting in damage to both.

- Before attaching the bracket to the flash, check that the lithium battery (CR123A or DL123) is installed.
- To illuminate the subjects properly, install the flash so that it is up against the side of the camera and parallel with the camera’s front panel.
- A tripod can be used even when the flash is attached.

Batteries

●Charge becomes Severely Limited

If the battery usage time has considerably diminished, wipe the battery terminals well with a dry cloth. The terminals may be dirty from fingerprints.

●Usage in Cold Temperatures (Less than 0°C/32°F)

Get a spare generic lithium battery (CR123A or DL123). You are recommended to place the spare battery in your pocket to warm it up before switching it for the battery in the flash.

●Non-Use over Extended Periods

Leaving batteries in the High-Power Flash could allow the battery fluid to leak, damaging the product. Remove the batteries from the High-Power Flash and store them in a cool, dry place.

Camera Care and Maintenance

Never use thinners, benzine, synthetic cleansers or water to clean the camera. These substances may distort or damage the equipment.

Camera Body

Gently wipe dirt off the camera body with a soft cloth or eyeglass lens wiper.

Lens

First use a lens blower brush to remove dust and dirt, then remove any remaining dirt by wiping the lens lightly with a soft cloth.

Never use synthetic cleansers on the camera body or lens. If dirt remains, contact the closest Canon Customer Support Help Desk as listed on the rear of the European Warranty System (EWS) Booklet.

Viewfinder and LCD Monitor

Use a lens blower brush to remove dust and dirt. If necessary, gently wipe with a soft cloth or an eyeglass lens wiper to remove stubborn dirt.

Never rub or press strongly on the LCD monitor. These actions may damage it or lead to other problems.

Specifications

All data is based on Canon's standard testing methods. Subject to change without notice.

DIGITAL IXUS 750

(W): wide angle (T): telephoto

Camera Effective Pixels	Approx. 7.1 million
Image Sensor	1/1.8-inch CCD (Total number of pixels: Approx. 7.4 million)
Lens	7.7 (W) – 23.1 (T) mm (35mm film equivalent: 37 (W) – 111 (T) mm) f/2.8 (W) – f/4.9 (T)
Digital Zoom	Approx. 4x (Up to approx. 12x in combination with the optical zoom)
Optical Viewfinder	Real-image zoom viewfinder
LCD Monitor	2.5-inch, low-temperature polycrystalline silicon TFT color LCD, approx. 115,000 pixels (Picture coverage 100%)
AF System	TTL autofocus Focusing frame: 9-point AiAF/1-point AF (fixed to center)
Shooting Distance (From the front of the lens)	Normal: 50 cm (1.6 ft.) – infinity Macro: 5 – 50 cm (W)/30 – 50 cm (T) (2.0 in. – 1.6 ft. (W)/1.0 – 1.6 ft. (T)) Infinity: 3 m (9.8 ft.) – infinity
Shutter	Mechanical shutter + electronic shutter
Shutter Speeds	15 – 1/2000 sec. The shutter speed varies according to the shooting mode. Slow shutter speeds of 1.3 sec. or slower operate with noise reduction.
Metering System	Evaluative, Center-weighted average or Spot (fixed to center)
Exposure Compensation	± 2 stops in 1/3-stop increments
Sensitivity	Auto*, ISO 50/100/200/400 equivalent * Camera automatically sets the optimal speed.

White Balance	Auto, pre-set (available settings: Daylight, Cloudy, Tungsten, Fluorescent or Fluorescent H) or custom
Built-in Flash	Auto, auto with red-eye reduction, flash on with red-eye reduction, flash on, flash off, slow synchro
Flash Range	Normal: 50 cm – 5.0 m (1.6 – 16.4 ft.) (W), 50 cm – 3.0 m (1.6 – 9.8 ft.) (T) Macro: 30 cm – 50 cm (1.0 – 1.6 ft.) (W/T) (When sensitivity is set to AUTO.)
Shooting Modes (Still images)	Auto, Manual[1], Digital macro[2], My Colors[2], Stitch assist[2], Special Scene[3] 1 Long shutter mode available 2 Selectable in Manual mode. 3 Portrait, Night Snapshot, Kids&Pets, Indoor, Foliage, Snow, Beach, Fireworks, Underwater
(Movies)	Standard, Fast Frame Rate, Compact, My Colors
Continuous Shooting	Approx. 2.0 shots/sec. (Large/Fine mode)
Self-timer	Activates shutter after an approx. 10-sec./ approx. 2-sec. delay, Custom Timer
Recording Media	SD memory card/MultiMediaCard This camera has been tested with memory cards through 2GB. All memory card functions cannot be guaranteed.
File Format	Design rule for camera file system and DPOF compliant
Data Type (Still images)	Exif 2.2 (JPEG)[*1]
(Movies)	AVI (Image data: Motion JPEG; Audio data: WAVE (monaural))
Compression	Superfine, Fine, Normal
Number of Recording Pixels (Still Images)	Large: 3072 x 2304 pixels Medium 1: 2592 x 1944 pixels Medium 2: 2048 x 1536 pixels Medium 3: 1600 x 1200 pixels Small: 640 x 480 pixels Postcard Date Imprint Mode:1600 x 1200 pixels

Number of Recording Pixels (Movies)	Standard, My Colors: 640 x 480 pixels (30 frames/sec., 15 frames/sec.) 320 x 240 pixels (30 frames/sec., 15 frames/sec.) Recording can continue until the memory card is full* (can record up to a maximum of 1 GB at one time). Fast Frame Rate: (can record for 1 min.) 320 x 240 pixels (60 frames/sec.) Compact: (can record for 3 min.) 160 x 120 pixels (15 frames/sec.) * Using super high-speed SD cards (SDC-512MSH recommended).
Playback Modes	Single (histogram displayable), Index (9 thumbnail images), Magnified (approx. 10x (max.) in LCD monitor, advance or reverse through magnified images possible), Jump (jumps to every tenth or hundredth image, to the first image of those sharing a certain shooting date, to movies, or to the first image in a folder. In index playback mode, it displays 9 images at once.), Sound memos (up to 60 sec.), Slide show or Movie (edit/slow motion play back possible).
Direct Print	*PictBridge* compliant, and *Canon Direct Print* and *Bubble Jet Direct* compatible
My Camera Settings	Start-up image, start-up sound, operation sound, self-timer sound, and shutter sound.
Interface	USB 2.0 Hi-Speed (mini-B), PTP (Picture Transfer Protocol) Audio/Video output (NTSC or PAL selectable, monaural audio)
Power Source	Battery Pack NB-3L (Lithium-ion Rechargeable battery) AC Adapter Kit ACK900
Operating Temperature	0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)
Operating Humidity	10 – 90%
Dimensions	89.5 x 57.0 x 27.4 mm (3.52 x 2.24 x 1.08 in.)
Weight	Approx. 170 g (6.00 oz.) (camera body only)

[1] This digital camera supports Exif 2.2 (also called "Exif Print"). Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers. By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant printer, the camera's image data at the time of shooting is used and optimized, yielding extremely high quality prints.

Battery Capacity (Battery Pack NB-3L (Fully charged))

Number of Images Shot		Playback Time
LCD Monitor ON (Based on the CIPA standard)	LCD Monitor Off	
Approx. 150 images	Approx. 600 images	Approx. 3 hours

- The actual figures will vary according to the shooting conditions and settings.
- Movie data is excluded.
- At low temperatures, the battery performance may diminish and the low battery icon may appear very rapidly. In these circumstances, the performance can be improved by warming the battery in a pocket before use.

Test Conditions

Shooting: Normal temperature (23 °C ± 2 °C/73 °F ± 3.6 °F), normal relative humidity (50% ± 20%), alternating wide angle end and telephoto end shots at 30 second intervals with the flash fired once every two shots and the camera power turned off after every tenth shot. Power is left off for a sufficient amount of time*, then the power is turned back on and the testing procedure is repeated.

- A Canon-brand memory card is used.

*Until the battery returns to normal temperature

Playback: Normal temperature (23 °C ± 2 °C/73 °F ± 3.6 °F), normal relative humidity (50% ± 20%), continuous playback at 3 seconds per image.

See *Battery Handling Precautions* (p. 105).

Memory Cards and Estimated Capacities

☐: Card included with the camera

Resolution	Compression	☐ SDC-32MH	SDC-128M	SDC-512MSH
L (Large) 3072 x 2304 pixels	S	9	40	▨ 156*
	◢	15	64	▨ 251
	▟	▨ 31	134	▨ 520
M1 (Middle 1) 2592 x 1944 pixels	S	11	49	▨ 190
	◢	▨ 20	87	▨ 339
	▟	▨ 40	▨ 173	▨ 671
M2 (Middle 2) 2048 x 1536 pixels	S	▨ 17*	76	▨ 295
	◢	▨ 32	136	▨ 529
	▟	▨ 63	▨ 269	▨ 1041
M3 (Middle 3) 1600 x 1200 pixels	S	▨ 28	121	▨ 471
	◢	▨ 51	▨ 217	▨ 839
	▟	▨ 97	▨ 411	▨ 1590
S (Small) 640 x 480 pixels	S	▨ 109	▨ 460	▨ 1777
	◢	▨ 168	▨ 711	▨ 2747
	▟	▨ 265	▨ 1118	▨ 4317
(PostCard Date Imprint Mode) 1600 x 1200 pixels	◢	▨ 51	▨ 217	▨ 839

- ▨ Capable of smooth continuous shooting (p. 38)
  (*Only available when card has been formatted with a low level format).
- This reflects standard shooting criteria established by Canon. Actual results may vary according to the subject and shooting conditions.

Movies

	Resolution		☐ SDC-32MH	SDC-128M	SDC-512MSH
Standard My Colors	640 640 x 480 pixels	30	14 sec.	1 min. 4 sec.	4 min. 9 sec.
		15	30 sec.	2 min. 7 sec.	8 min. 14 sec.
	320 320 x 240 pixels	30	42 sec.	3 min. 1 sec.	11 min. 42 sec.
		15	1 min. 24 sec.	5 min. 55 sec.	22 min. 53 sec.
Fast Frame Rate	320 320 x 240 pixels	60	21 sec.	1 min. 32 sec.	5 min. 59 sec.
Compact	160 160x 120 pixels	15	3 min. 26 sec.	14 min. 29 sec.	55 min. 57 sec.

* Maximum movie clip length at : 1 min., at : 3 min. The figures indicate the maximum continuous recording time.

Image Data Sizes (Estimated)

Resolution	Compression		
	S	◢	▟
L (3072 x 2304 pixels)	3045KB	1897KB	902KB
M1 (2592 x 1944 pixels)	2503KB	1395KB	695KB
M2 (2048 x 1536 pixels)	1602KB	893KB	445KB
M3 (1600 x 1200 pixels)	1002KB	558KB	278KB
S (640 x 480 pixels)	249KB	150KB	84KB
(1600 x 1200 pixels)	-	558KB	-

	Resolution	Frame Rate	File size
Standard	640 (640 x 480 pixels)	30	1980 KB/sec.
		15	990 KB/sec.
My Colors	320 (320 x 240 pixels)	30	660 KB/sec.
		15	330 KB/sec.
Fast Frame Rate	320 (320 x 240 pixels)	60	1320 KB/sec.
Compact	160 (160 x 120 pixels)	15	120 KB/sec.

SD Memory Card

Interface	Compatible with SD memory card standards
Dimensions	32.0 x 24.0 x 2.1 mm (1.3 x 0.9 x 0.1 in.)
Weight	Approx. 2 g (0.07 oz.)

Battery Pack NB-3L

Type	Lithium-ion Rechargeable battery
Nominal Voltage	3.7 V DC
Typical Capacity	790 mAh
Cycle Life	Approx. 300 times
Operating Temperatures	0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)
Dimensions	32.0 x 44.8 x 9.0 mm (1.3 x 1.8 x 0.4 in.)
Weight	Approx. 22 g (0.8 oz.)

Battery Charger CB-2LU/CB-2LUE

Rated Input	100 – 240 V AC (50/60 Hz) 0.085 A (100 V)-0.05 A (240 V)
Rated Output	4.2 V DC, 0.7 A
Charging Time	Approx. 95 minutes
Operating Temperatures	0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)
Dimensions	52.0 x 71.0 x 25.8 mm (2.0 x 2.8 x 1.0 in.)
Weight	Approx. 56 g (2.0 oz.) (CB-2LU) Approx. 58 g (2.0 oz.) (CB-2LUE)

Compact Power Adapter CA-PS500

(Included with the separately sold AC Adapter Kit ACK900)

Rated Input	100 – 240 V AC (50/ 60 Hz) 0.16 A (100 V)-0.11 A (240 V)
Rated Output	4.3 V DC, 1.5 A
Operating Temperatures	0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)
Dimensions	42.6 x 104.4 x 31.4 mm (1.7 x 4.1 x 1.2 in.)
Weight	Approx. 180 g (6.3 oz.)

INDEX

A

AC Adapter Kit ACK900 109
AE Lock 48
AF Frame 46, 47
AF Lock 47
AF-assist Beam 28
AiAF 28
Auto Play (Slide Show) 78
Auto Rotate Function 65
AV Cable 89

B

Battery
  Battery Capacity 116
  Charging .... 106, *Basic* 1
  Handling 105
  Installing .... *Basic* 2

C

Clock Display 16
Compression 33
Continuous Shooting 38
Create Folder 66
Custom White Balance 55

D

Date/Time
  Setting .... *Basic* 4
  Using the Clock 16
  World Clock 24
Digital Macro 36
DIGITAL Terminal .. 12, *Basic* 19
Digital Zoom 37
Direct Transfer .... *Basic* 22
Downloading Images to a Computer .... *Basic* 16
DPOF Print Order
  Print Style 85
  Selecting Images 83
DPOF Transfer Order 87

E

Erasing
  All Images 82
  Single Images .... 14, *Basic* 11
Exposure 51
Exposure Shift 44

F

FE Lock 49
File Number 67
Flash .... 14, *Basic* 9
Focus 46
Focus Lock 47
Frame Rate 34
FUNC. Menu 26
FUNC./SET button 14

G

Grid Line 28

H

HF-DC1 110
Histogram 21

I

Image Data Sizes (Estimated) 118
Index Playback 70
Indicator 22
Infinity .... 14, *Basic* 10
Interface Cable .... *Basic* 14, 18
ISO Speed 64

J

JUMP (Image Search) 71

L

Language .... *Basic* 4
LCD Monitor
  Night Display 17
  Playback Information 19
  Quick-bright LCD 17
  Shooting Information 18
  Using the LDC Monitor 15

M

Macro .... 14, *Basic* 10
Magnifying 69
Memory Card
  Estimated Capacities 117
  Formatting 23, 108
  Handling 107
  Inserting .... *Basic* 2
Menu
  FUNC. Menu 26, 28
  Menu List 28
  Menus and Settings 26
  My Camera Menu 31
  Play Menu 29
  Rec. Menu 28
  Rec./Play/Set up/My Camera 27
  Set up Menu 29
MENU button 14
Messages 102
Metering Modes 50
Mode Dial .... 14, *Basic* 4, 5
Movie
  Editing 73
  Playback 72
  Shooting 42
Mute Mode .... 29, *Basic* 5
My Camera Menu 31
My Camera Settings 91
My Colors 58

P

Photo Effect 57
Playback .... *Basic* 11
Postcard Date Imprint Mode ... 39
Power Button .... 14, *Basic* 5
Power Saving 22, 30
Print/Share Button .... 14, ... *Basic* 14, 22
Printing .... *Basic* 14
Protect 82

R

Red-Eye Reduction .. 12, *Basic* 9
Reset All 31
Resolution 32, 34
Rotate 75

S

Self-Timer 40
Set up Menu 29
Shooting Mode
  Auto .... *Basic* 6
  Manual .... 35, *Basic* 6, 7
  Movie .... 42, *Basic* 8
  Selecting .... *Basic* 6
  Special Scene Mode .... 35, *Basic* 7
Shutter Button 14
  Fully .... *Basic* 5
  Halfway .... *Basic* 5
Shutter Speed 52
Slide Show 78
  Repeat Settings 81
  Selecting 80
  Transition Effects 79
Smooth Continuous Shooting 38
Sound Memo 76
Spot AE Point Frame 18, 50
Stitch Assist 44
System Requirements .. *Basic* 17

T

Telephoto .... *Basic* 8
Time Zone 24, 30
Transition Effects
  Playback 76
  Slide Show 79

V

Video Output System 89

W

White Balance 54
Wide Angle .... *Basic* 8
World Clock 24
Wrist Strap 12

Z

Zoom .... *Basic* 8

Disclaimer

- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained in this guide is accurate and complete, no liability can be accepted for any errors or omissions.
- Canon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described herein at anytime without prior notice.
- No part of this guide may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without the prior written permission of Canon.
- Canon makes no warranties for damages resulting from corrupted or lost data due to a mistaken operation or malfunction of the camera, the software, SD memory cards (SD cards), personal computers, peripheral devices, or use of non-Canon SD cards.

Trademark Acknowledgments

- Canon, PIXMA and SELPHY are trademarks of Canon Inc.
- Macintosh, Mac OS and QuickTime are trademarks of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.
- Microsoft® and Windows® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- SD is a trademark.
- Other names and products not mentioned above may be registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

Copyright © 2005 Canon Inc. All rights reserved.

Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode

The chart below is a reference for the settings available for various shooting conditions. The settings selected in each shooting mode are saved after you finish shooting.

Function			📷	📷M				SCN		Page
			📷	CM	D				🎥	
Resolution	Large	L	○*	○*	○*	○*	△*	○*	–	p.32 p.34
	Medium 1	M1	○	○	○	○	△	○	–	
	Medium 2	M2	○	○	○	○	△	○	–	
	Medium 3	M3	○	○	○	○	△	○	–	
	Small	S	○	○	○	○	△	○	–	
	Postcard		○	○	–	○	–	○	–	
	Movies		–	–	–	–	–	–	○(1)	
Compression	Super Fine	S	○	○	○	○	△	○	–	p.32
	Fine		○*	○*	○*	○*	△*	○*	–	
	Normal		○	○	○	○	△	○	–	
Frame Rate			–	–	–	–	–	–	○(2)	p.34
Flash(3)	Auto	⚡A	○	○	–	○	–	○	–	Basic p.9
	Auto with Red-Eye Reduction		○*	○*	–	○*	–	○	–	
	On with Red-Eye Reduction	⚡	–	–	–	–	–	○	–	
	On	⚡	–	○	–	○	△	○	–	
	Off		○	○	○*	○(4)	△*	○	–	
	Slow Synchro		–	○	–	○	△	–	–	
Macro Mode			○	○	–	○	△	○(5)	○	Basic p.10
Infinity Mode			–	○	–	○	△	○(5)	○	
AF Lock		AFL	–	○	○	○	–	–	○	p.47
AE Lock		AEL	–	○	○	○	–	–	○	p.48
FE Lock		FEL	–	○	–	○	–	–	–	p.49
Shooting Method	Single		○*	○*	○*	○*	△*	○*	○*	–
	Continuous Shooting		–	○	○	–	–	○	–	p.38
	10-sec. Self-Timer	10	○	○	○	○	△	○	○	p.40
	2-sec. Self-Timer	2	○	○	○	○	△	○	○	
	Custom Timer	C	○	○	○	–	–	○	–	
Date Stamp			○	○	–	○	–	○	–	p.39
Autofocus Modes			–	○	○	○	–	○(6)	–	p.46

Function		📷	📷M				SCN	🎥	Page
		📷	📷M	D	🖌	⧉	👤 🌃 🐾 🎉 🍃 ⛄ 🏖 🎆 🐟		
AF-assist Beam		○	○	○	○	△	○(7)	○	p.28
Digital Zoom	On	○	○	○	–	–	○	○(8)	p.37
	Off	○*	○*	–	○	–	○*	○*	
Metering Method	Evaluative	○	○*	○*	○*	–	–(10)	–	p.50
	Center-Weighted Average	–	○	○	○	–	–	–	
	Spot	–	○	○	○	–	–	–	
Exposure Compensation		–	○	○	○(9)	△	○	–	p.51
Exposure Shift		–	–	–	–	–	–	○	p.44
Long Shutter		–	○	–	–	–	–	–	p.52
White Balance		–	○	○	○	△	–(10)	○	p.54
Photo Effect		–	○	○	–	△	–(10)	○(11)	p.57
ISO Speed		–(10)	○	○	–(10)	–(10)	–(10)	–(10)	p.64
Auto Rotate		○	○	○	○	△	○	–	p.65
Grid Lines		○	○	○	○	–	○	○	p.28

*Default setting ○Setting available △ Setting can only be selected for the first image.
▨ (Shaded Area):Setting is retained even when the camera power is shut off.

With the exception of the [Time Zone], [Date/Time], [Language] and [Video System] settings, all the other menu settings and changes made with the camera buttons can be reset to the default values in a single operation (p. 31).

(1)(2) The resolutions and frame rates for the 🎥 (Movie) mode are as follows.

	Resolution			Frame Rate		
	640	320	160	60	30	15
🎥 🎥🖌	○*	○	–	–	○*	○
🎥⚡	–	○	–	○	–	–
🎥✉	–	–	○	–	–	○

(3) The default flash setting is Auto with Red-Eye Reduction in the 👤 🌃 🐾 🎉 modes, Auto in the ⛄ 🏖 🐟 modes, and Off in the 🍃 🎆 modes.
  - The flash cannot be set in 🎆 mode.
  - When the flash fires in 🌃 mode, the camera will automatically use Slow Synchro mode.

(4) The flash is set by default not to fire in the 🖌A and 🖌S modes.

(5) You cannot switch between the Macro/Infinity modes when the camera is in the 🐾 🎆 modes.

(6) AF cannot be selected in the 🐾 🎆 modes.

(7) The AF-assist Beam cannot be set in 🎆 mode.

(8) Can be set during shooting (only in Standard mode).

(9) Exposure compensation not available in 🖌A or 🖌S modes.

(10) Automatically set by the camera.

(11) The Photo Effect cannot be set in the 🎥🖌 mode.

CEL-SF2LA210

© 2005 CANON INC.

ENGLISH

Canon

DIGITAL IXUS 750

- Preparations
- Shooting
- Playback/Erasing
- Menus and Settings
- Printing
- Downloading Images to a Computer

Basic

Camera User Guide

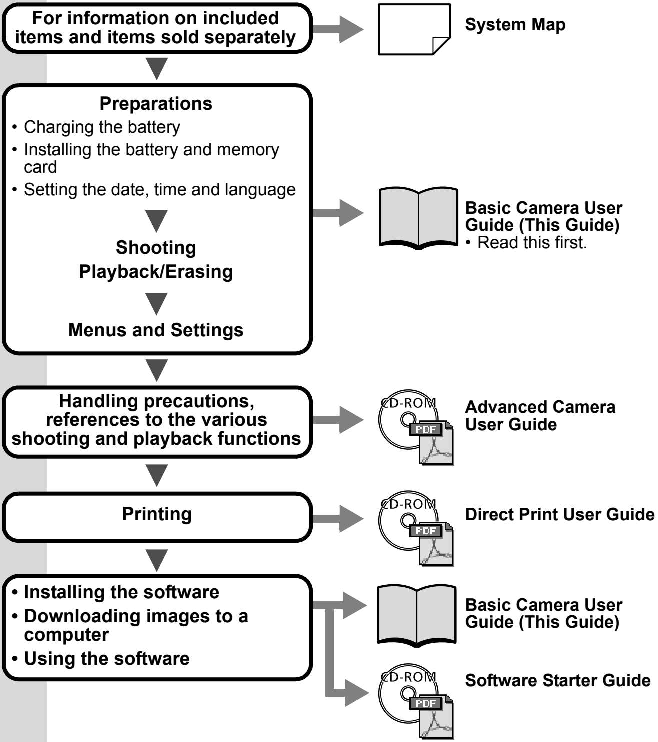
Please Read This First

This guide explains how to prepare the camera and use its basic features.

CEL-SF1WA210

Flowchart and Reference Guides

The following guides are available. Refer to them as necessary according to the flowchart below.



For information on included items and items sold separately → **System Map**

Preparations
- Charging the battery
- Installing the battery and memory card
- Setting the date, time and language

Shooting
Playback/Erasing

Menus and Settings

→ **Basic Camera User Guide (This Guide)**
- Read this first.

Handling precautions, references to the various shooting and playback functions → **Advanced Camera User Guide**

Printing → **Direct Print User Guide**

- **Installing the software**
- **Downloading images to a computer**
- **Using the software**

→ **Basic Camera User Guide (This Guide)**
→ **Software Starter Guide**

In this guide, the *Basic Camera User Guide* is called the *Basic Guide*, and the *Advanced Camera User Guide* is called the *Advanced Guide*. Also, "battery" refers to the battery pack.

Viewing the PDF Manuals

- Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat Reader must be installed to view the PDF Manuals. If this software is not installed in your computer, access the following web site and download the software.
  http://www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

Preparations

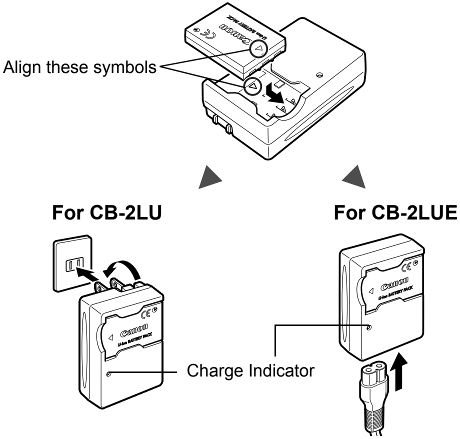
1. Charging the Battery.

Charge the battery before use under the following circumstances.

- When using the battery for the first time.
- When the "Change the battery pack" message displays.

1. **Insert the battery into the battery charger.**
2. **Plug the battery charger (CB-2LU) into a power outlet, or attach the power cord to the battery charger (CB-2LUE) and plug it into a power outlet.**
   - Battery charger model names and types vary by region.

   The charge indicator will light red while the battery is charging. It will change to green when the charge is complete. Charging takes approximately 95 minutes.


Align these symbols
For CB-2LU
For CB-2LUE
Canon
Li-ion BATTERY PACK
Charge Indicator

To protect the battery and prolong its life, do not charge it for longer than 24 hours continuously.

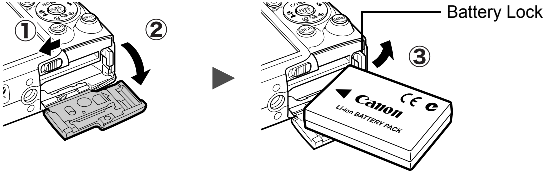
See the *Advanced Guide*: Battery Handling (p. 105)

2. Installing the Battery.

1. Slide the lock release switch in the direction of the arrow (①), and open the memory card slot/battery cover (②).

2. Push the battery lock in the direction of the arrow as shown (③) and insert the battery until it locks.

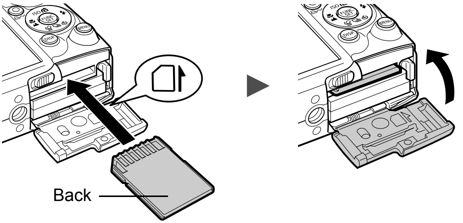
To remove the battery, push the battery lock in the direction of the arrow (③) and hold it while pulling the battery out.



3. Inserting the Memory Card.

1. Insert the memory card until it clicks into place.

2. Close the memory card slot/battery cover.



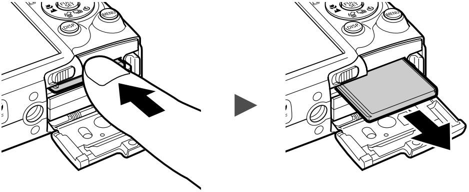
Ensure that the memory card is correctly oriented before inserting it in the camera. It may damage the camera if inserted incorrectly.

→ See the *Advanced Guide*: Handling the Memory Card (p. 107)

→ See the *Advanced Guide*: Formatting Memory Cards (p. 23)

■ To Remove the Memory Card

Use a finger to push the memory card in until you hear a click, then release it.

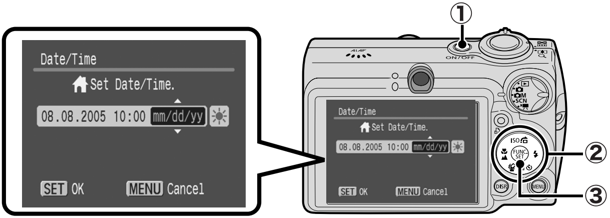


You can use SD* memory cards and MultiMediaCards with this camera. These cards are collectively called memory cards in this guide.

*SD stands for Secure Digital, a copyright protection system.

First Time Settings

■ Setting the Date/Time



Date/Time

Set Date/Time.

08.08.2005 10:00 mm/dd/yy

SET OK MENU Cancel

1. **Press the power button (①).**
2. **Use the ← or → button to select an item and the ↑ or ↓ button to change its value (②).**
   To set the daylight saving option, use the ↑ or ↓ button to display ☀.
3. **Confirm that the correct time is displayed and press the FUNC./SET button (③).**
   The date and time can also be set in the Set up menu (p. 13).

- A rechargeable lithium battery is built into the camera to save such settings as the date/time. This battery charges when the main battery is in the camera. When you purchase the camera, place the main battery in it for approximately four hours or use AC Adapter Kit ACK900 (sold separately) to charge the lithium battery. It will charge even if the camera is turned off.
- The date/time settings may be lost after approximately three weeks if you remove the main battery. Reset the date/time settings if this occurs.

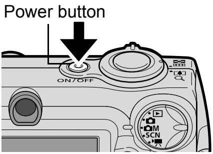
→ See the *Advanced Guide*: Setting the World Clock (p. 24).

■ Setting the Display Language

1. **Turn the mode dial to ▶ (playback).**
2. **Hold down the FUNC./SET button and press the MENU button.**
3. **Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select a language and press the FUNC./SET button.**
   The display language can also be set in the Set up menu (p. 13).

Shooting

1. Press the power button.



The start-up sound will play and the start-up image will display in the LCD monitor.

- Pressing the power button again turns the power off.
- To switch to the setting that mutes all sounds (except for the warning sound), press and hold the **DISP.** button while pressing the power button.

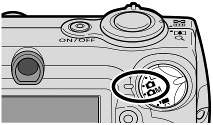
➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Using the LCD Monitor (p. 15)

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Power Saving Function (p. 22)

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Set up Menu (p. 29)

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: My Camera Menu (p. 31)

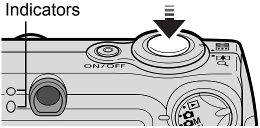
2. Turn the mode dial to 📷 (Auto).



3. Aim the camera at the subject.

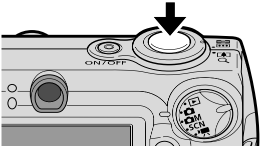
4. Focus and shoot.

1. Press the shutter button halfway to focus.



When the camera focuses, the camera beeps twice and the indicator lights green.

2. Press the shutter button fully to shoot.



The shutter sound will play and the image will record. The indicator will blink green while the image is recorded to the memory card.

➔ See Basic Shooting Functions (p. 6).

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Indicators (p. 22).

➔ See the *Advanced Guide* for the various shooting methods available.

Reviewing an Image Right After Shooting

After a shot is taken, the image appears in the LCD monitor for approximately 2 seconds.
You can continue to display images regardless of the review duration setting with the following procedures.

- Keeping the shutter button pressed after a shot.
- Pressing the **FUNC./SET** button while the image is displayed in the LCD monitor.

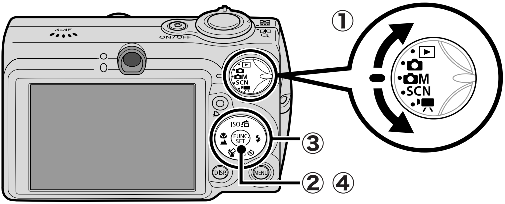
To stop displaying the image, press the shutter button halfway.

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Review (p. 28).

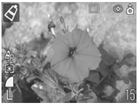
Basic Shooting Functions

■ Selecting a Shooting Mode

1. Turn the mode dial to the desired mode (①).
In the 📷M, SCN and 🎥 modes, press the **FUNC./SET** button (②) and use the ← or → button to select a shooting mode (③), then press the **FUNC./SET** button (④).



■ Shooting Modes

📷 AUTO	The camera automatically selects settings.	
📷M MANUAL	**Manual** Allows you to select settings yourself, such as the exposure compensation, white balance or photo effect.	 **My Colors** Allows you to change the image colors easily with 9 modes. ➔ See the *Advanced Guide* (p. 58).

M
MANUAL

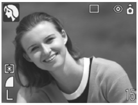
Digital Macro

Allows you to shoot when the distance from the lens (at maximum wide angle) to the subject is within 5 – 50 cm (2.0 in. – 1.6 ft.).
The subject can be shown larger than in standard macro mode because the camera trims the image edges and zooms in with the digital zoom.

Stitch Assist

Allows you to shoot overlapping images that can later be merged (stitched) to create one panoramic image on a computer. ➔ See the *Advanced Guide* (p. 44).

SCN
SPECIAL SCENE



Portrait

Blurs the background and makes a person stand out.

Night Snapshot

Allows you to take snapshots of people against twilight or night backgrounds by reducing the effects of camera shake even without using a tripod.

Kids&Pets

Allows you to capture subjects that move around, such as children and pets, without missing photo opportunities.

Indoor

Prevents camera shake and maintains the subject's true color when shooting under florescent or tungsten lighting.

Foliage

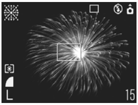
Shoots trees and leaves—such as new growth, autumn leaves or blossoms—in vivid colors.

Snow

Shoots without a blue tinge and without making people appear dark against a snowy background.

Beach

Shoots without making people appear dark near water or sand where reflected sunlight is strong.



Fireworks

Captures fireworks in the sky sharply and at optimal exposure.

Underwater

Appropriate for shooting images with Waterproof Case WP-DC80 (sold separately). This mode uses an optimal white balance setting to reduce bluish tones and record images with a natural hue. The exposure is regulated to use the flash as little as possible.

MOVIE	Shoots a movie when you press the shutter button. You can select from four modes: [Standard], [Fast Frame Rate] suitable for sports or fast motion, [Compact] convenient for email attachments and [My Colors] which allows you to change color effects. See the *Advanced Guide* (p. 42).

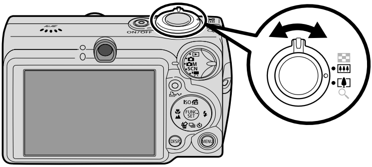
- The shutter speed is slow in mode. Always use a tripod to avoid camera shake.
- In , , , or mode, the ISO speed may increase and cause noise in the image depending on the scene being shot.
- In mode, shoot with the subject 1 m (3.3 ft.) or more from the end of the lens.

- To shoot underwater, install the camera in Waterproof Case WP-DC80 (sold separately).
- We recommend you use Waterproof Case WP-DC80 for shooting at ski resorts or beaches.

■ Using the Zoom

1. Press the zoom lever toward or .

The zoom can be adjusted from 37 mm – 111 mm (focal length) in 35mm film equivalent terms.

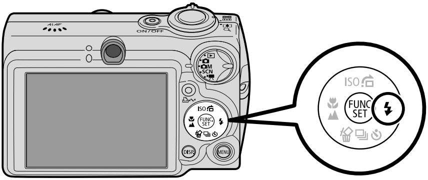


Wide Angle: Zooms out from the subject.

Telephoto: Zooms in on the subject.

■ Using the Flash

1. Press the ⚡ button to cycle through flash settings.



Flash settings cannot be used in some shooting modes.

- **Auto**
- **Auto with red-eye reduction**
- **Flash on with red-eye reduction**
- **Flash on**
- **Flash off**
- **Slow synchro**

Red-eye reduction

This feature reduces the effect of light reflecting back from the eyes and making them appear red.

Slow synchro

The flash timing is adjusted to a slow shutter speed, allowing you to shoot night scenes.

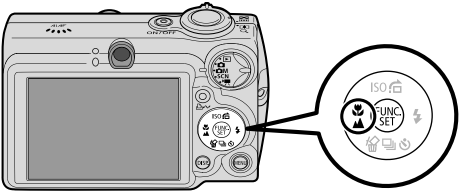
> You are recommended to shoot with the camera attached to a tripod or other device if the camera shake warning icon appears.

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode (p. 123).

■ Shooting Close-Ups/Infinity Shots

1. Press the 🌷/▲ button to switch modes.

To cancel the macro/infinity mode: press the 🌷/▲ button to remove 🌷 or ▲ from the display.



These settings cannot be set in some shooting modes.

🌷	**Macro** Use this mode to shoot close-ups of flowers or small items. Image Area at Minimum Shooting Distance from End of Lens to Subject • Maximum wide angle setting: 56 × 42 mm (2.2 × 1.7 in.) Minimum shooting distance: 5 cm (2.0 in.) • Maximum telephoto setting: 105 × 79 mm (4.1 × 3.1 in.) Minimum shooting distance: 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
▲	**Infinity** Use this mode to record subjects 3 m (10 ft.) or more from the end of the lens.

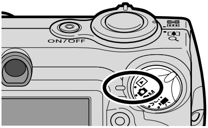
- Use the LCD monitor to compose close-ups in macro mode since images composed with the viewfinder may be off-center.
- The exposure may not be optimal when the flash is used in macro mode in the range of 5 – 30 cm (2.0 in. – 1.0 ft.).

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode (p. 123).

Playback

1. Turn the mode dial to ▶ (playback).

The last recorded image will appear in the LCD monitor.



2. Use the ← or → button to display the image you wish to view.

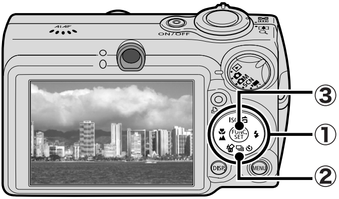
Use the ← button to move to the previous image and the → button to move the next image.

Holding the button down advances the images more rapidly, but shows them less clearly.

→ See the *Advanced Guide* for the various playback methods available (p. 69)

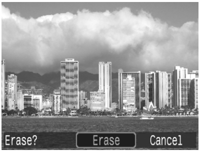
Erasing

1. In the playback mode, use the ← or → button to select an image to erase (①) and press the 🗑 button (②).



2. Confirm that [Erase] is selected and press the FUNC./SET button (③).

To exit instead of erasing, select [Cancel].



Please note that erased images cannot be recovered. Exercise adequate caution before erasing an image.

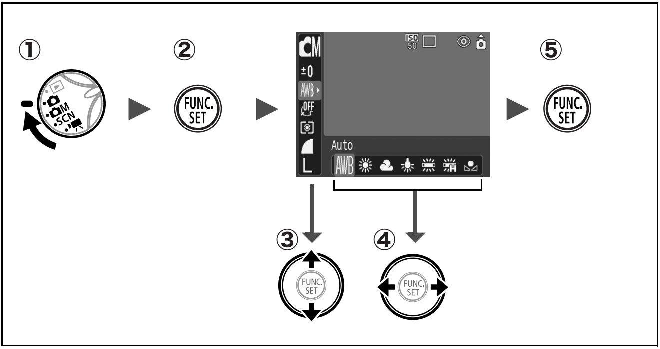
→ See the *Advanced Guide*: Erasing All Images (p. 82).

Menus and Settings

Settings for the shooting or playback modes or such camera settings as the date/time and sounds are set using the FUNC., Rec., Play, Set up or My Camera menu.

FUNC. Menu

This menu sets many of the common shooting functions.



①**Turn the mode dial to 📷, 📷M, SCN or 🎥.**

②**Press the FUNC./SET button.**

③**Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a menu item.**

- Some items may not be selectable in some shooting modes.

④**Use the ← or → button to select an option for the menu item.**

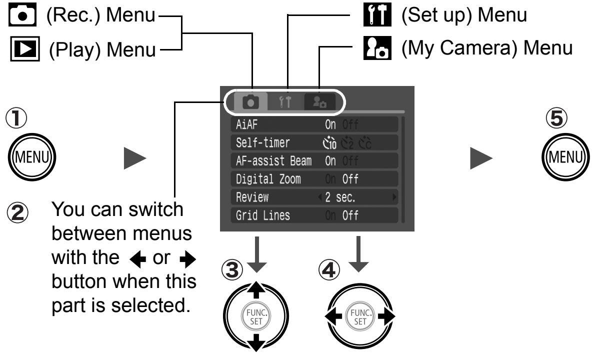
- You can select further options with the **MENU** button for some options.
- After selecting an option, you can press the shutter button to shoot immediately. After shooting, this menu will appear again, allowing you to adjust the settings easily.

⑤**Press the FUNC./SET button.**

➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Menu List (p. 28).

Rec., Play, Set up and My Camera Menus

Convenient settings for shooting or playback can be set with these menus.



AiAF On Off
Self-timer
AF-assist Beam On Off
Digital Zoom On Off
Review 2 sec.
Grid Lines On Off

② You can switch between menus with the ← or → button when this part is selected.

- This example shows the Rec. menu.
- In playback mode, the Play menu displays.

①Press the MENU button.

②Use the ← or → button to switch between menus.

- You can also use the zoom lever to switch between menus.

③Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a menu item.

- Some items may not be selectable in some shooting modes.

④Use the ← or → button to select an option.

- Menu items followed by an ellipsis (...) can only be set after pressing the **FUNC./SET** button to display the next menu.
- Press the **FUNC./SET** button again to confirm the setting.

⑤Press the MENU button.

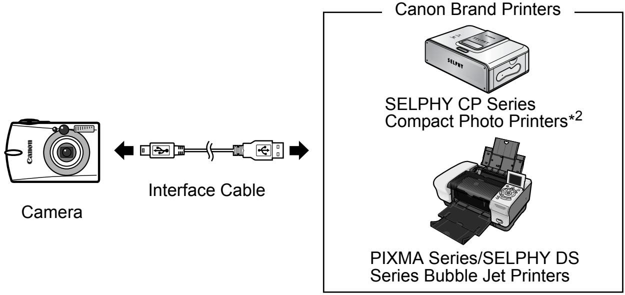
➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: Menu List (p. 28).

Printing

Connect the camera to a direct print compatible printer[*1] with a cable and simply press the ⎙∿ button on the camera.

1. Connect the camera to a *Direct Print* compatible printer and turn on the printer's power.

Turn the mode dial to ▶ (playback) mode and turn on the camera's power.


Canon Brand Printers
SELPHY CP Series Compact Photo Printers*2
Camera
Interface Cable
PIXMA Series/SELPHY DS Series Bubble Jet Printers

[*1] Since this camera uses a standard protocol (PictBridge), you can use it with other PictBridge-compliant printers in addition to Canon-brand printers.

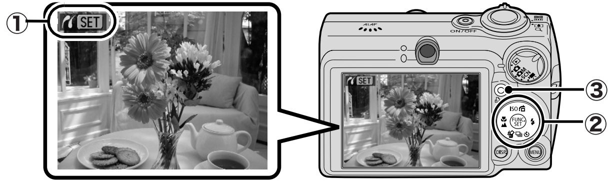
[*2] You can also use card photo printers such as the CP-10/CP-100/CP-200/CP-300.

2. Confirm that ⎙, ⎙ or ☑ is displayed in the upper left of the LCD monitor (①).

- The ⎙∿ button will light blue.
- The displayed icon will vary according to the printer model.

3. Use the ← or → button to select an image to print (②) and press the ⎙∿ button (③).

The ⎙∿ button will blink blue and printing will start.



➔ See the *Advanced Guide*: DPOF Print Settings (p. 83).

➔ See the *Direct Print User Guide*

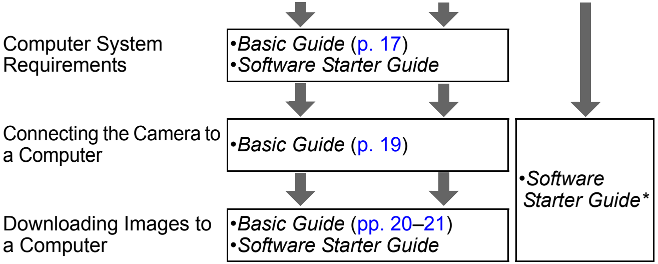
➔ See the user guide for your printer

Downloading Images to a Computer

The following methods can be used to download images recorded by the camera to a computer. Some methods, depending on the OS used, may not be available. Please read *System Requirements* (p. 17) in advance.

■ Camera to Computer Connection

Supplied Software		Install It		Do Not Install It
Downloading Method		Computer Procedure	Camera Procedure	Computer Procedure
OS	Windows 98 Second Edition (SE)	●	●	–
	Windows 2000	●	●	–
	Windows Me	●	●	–
	Windows XP	●	●	●
	Mac OS X	●	●	●



Computer System Requirements
- *Basic Guide* (p. 17)
- *Software Starter Guide*

Connecting the Camera to a Computer
- *Basic Guide* (p. 19)

Downloading Images to a Computer
- *Basic Guide* (pp. 20–21)
- *Software Starter Guide*

Do Not Install It – Computer Procedure:
- *Software Starter Guide**

* Please also see the *Windows XP and Mac OS X Users* leaflet.

■ Using a Memory Card Reader

A memory card reader can be used with all the operating systems listed above. See the *Software Starter Guide* for details.

System Requirements

Please install the software on a computer meeting the following minimum requirements.

■ Windows

OS	Windows 98 Second Edition (SE) Windows Me Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 Windows XP (including Service Pack 1 and Service Pack 2)
Computer Model	The above OS should be pre-installed on computers with built-in USB ports.
CPU	Pentium 500 MHz or higher processor
RAM	Windows 98 SE/Windows Me 128 MB or more Windows 2000/Windows XP 256 MB or more
Interface	USB
Free Hard Disk Space	• Canon Utilities - ZoomBrowser EX 250 MB or more (Including the PhotoRecord printing program) - PhotoStitch 40 MB or more • Canon Camera TWAIN Driver 25 MB or more • Canon Camera WIA Driver 25 MB or more • ArcSoft PhotoStudio 50 MB or more
Display	1,024 x 768 pixels/High Color (16 bit) or better

■ Macintosh

OS	Mac OS X (v10.2–v10.3)
Computer Model	The above OS should be pre-installed on computers with built-in USB ports.
CPU	PowerPC G3/G4/G5
RAM	256 MB or more
Interface	USB
Free Hard Disk Space	• Canon Utilities - ImageBrowser 200 MB or more - PhotoStitch 40 MB or more • ArcSoft PhotoStudio 50 MB or more
Display	1,024 x 768 pixels/32,000 Colors or better

Preparing to Download Images

Ensure that you install the software first before connecting the camera to the computer.

■ Items to Prepare

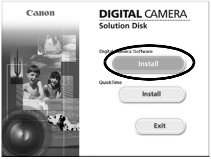
- Camera and computer
- Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk supplied with the camera
- Interface cable supplied with the camera

1. Install the software.

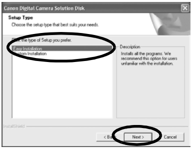
1. Place the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk in the computer's CD-ROM drive.

> **Macintosh** Double-click the [Canon Digital Camera Installer] icon in the CD-ROM window.

2. Click the Digital Camera Software [Install] button and click [Next].



3. Select [Easy Installation] as the setup type and click [Next].
Proceed with the installation while reviewing installation settings.


Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk

Setup Type

Choose the setup type that best suits your needs.

Click the type of Setup you prefer.

Easy Installation

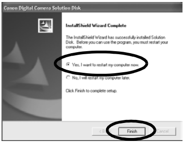
Custom Installation

Description

Installs all the programs. We recommend this option for users unfamiliar with the installation.

4. When the installation is complete, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.] and click [Finish].

> **Macintosh** When the installation is finished, click [OK].


Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk

InstallShield Wizard Complete

The InstallShield Wizard has successfully installed Solution Disk. Before you can use the program, you must restart your computer.

● Yes, I want to restart my computer now.

○ No, I will restart my computer later.

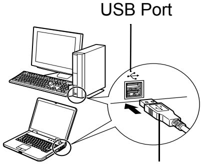
Click Finish to complete setup.

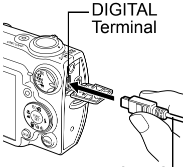
5. Remove the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk from the CD-ROM drive after restarting.

2. Connecting the camera to a computer.

1. Connect the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and to the camera's DIGITAL terminal.

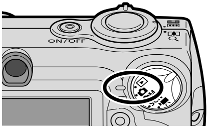
Slip a fingernail under the bottom edge of the camera's DIGITAL terminal cover, lift up and plug the interface cable in all the way.





2. Turn the camera's mode dial to ▶ (playback) and turn on the power.

The camera and computer will be able to communicate.



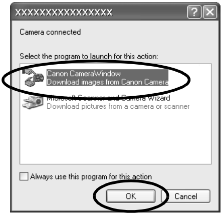
Always grasp the sides of the connector when disconnecting the interface cable from the camera's DIGITAL terminal.

Windows If the Digital Signature Not Found window appears, click [Yes]. The USB driver will automatically finish installing onto the computer when you attach the camera and open a connection.

Windows Downloading Images to a Computer

A window allowing you to set the preferences will appear when a connection is established between the camera and computer.

1. Select [Canon CameraWindow] and click [OK] (first time only).



XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Camera connected

Select the program to launch for this action:

Canon CameraWindow
Download images from Canon Camera

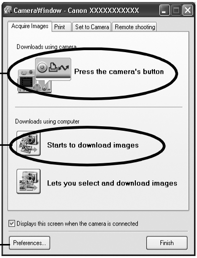
Microsoft Scanner and Camera Wizard
Download pictures from a camera or scanner

☐ Always use this program for this action

> If the window to the right does not appear, click the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [CameraWindow] and [CameraWindow].

2. Download the images.

- Download the images using the camera or the computer.
- By default, the downloaded images are saved into the [My Pictures] folder.



CameraWindow - Canon XXXXXXXXXXX

Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting

Downloads using camera

Press the camera's button

Downloads using computer

Starts to download images

Lets you select and download images

☑ Displays this screen when the camera is connected

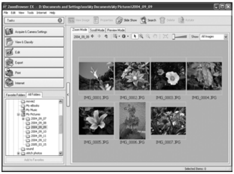
Preferences...
Finish

Downloading Images Using the Camera (p. 22).

Downloading Images Using a Computer. By default, all images that have yet to be downloaded will download.

You can set the type of image to download and the destination folder.

Thumbnails (small versions) of the downloaded images will display in the ZoomBrowser EX Main Window. By default, the downloaded images are saved into subfolders according to their shooting dates.



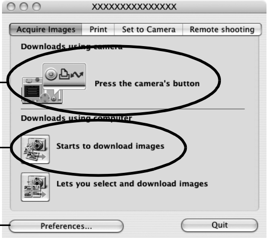
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
IMG_0006.JPG
IMG_0007.JPG

Macintosh Downloading Images to a Computer

The following window will appear when you establish a connection between the camera and computer. If it fails to appear, click the [Canon CameraWindow] icon on the Dock (the bar which appears at the bottom of the desktop).

1. Download the images.

Download the images using the camera or the computer.


XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Downloads using camera
Press the camera's button
Downloads using computer
Starts to download images
Lets you select and download images
Preferences...
Quit

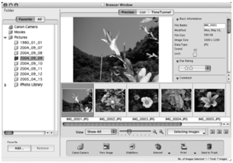
Downloading Images Using the Camera (p. 22).

Downloading Images Using a Computer.

By default, all images that have yet to be downloaded will download.

You can set the type of image to download and the destination folder.

Thumbnails (small versions) of the downloaded images will display in the ImageBrowser Browser Window. By default, the downloaded images are saved into folders according to their shooting dates.



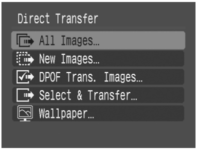
Downloading Images Using the Camera (Direct Transfer)

Use this method to download images using camera operations.
Install the supplied software and adjust the computer settings before using this method for the first time (p. 18).

➡	**All Images**	Transfers and saves all images to the computer.
⬚	**New Images**	Transfers and saves to the computer only the images that have not been previously transferred.
☑	**DPOF Trans. Images**	Transfers and saves to the computer only the images with DPOF Transfer Order settings.
➡	**Select & Transfer**	Transfers and saves single images to the computer as you view and select them.
🖼	**Wallpaper**	Transfers and saves single images to the computer as you view and select them. The transferred images display on the computer desktop.

1. Confirm that the Direct Transfer menu is displayed on the camera's LCD monitor.

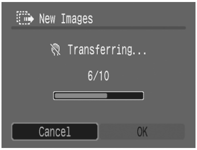
- The ⎙ button will light blue.
- Press the **MENU** button if the Direct Transfer menu fails to appear.



Direct Transfer Menu

■ All Images/New Images/DPOF Trans. Images

2. Select ➡, ⬚ or ☑ and press the ⎙ button.



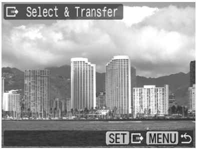
- The images will download. The ⎙ button will blink blue while downloading is in progress. The display will return to the Direct Transfer menu when the download is complete.
- To cancel the download, press the **FUNC./SET** button.

■ Select & Transfer/Wallpaper

2. Select ⇨ or 🖼 and press the ⎙ button (or the FUNC./SET button).

3. Select images to download and press the ⎙ button (or the FUNC./SET button).

- The images will download. The ⎙ button will blink blue while downloading is in progress.
- Images can also be selected during index playback (*Advanced Guide* p. 70).
- Press the **MENU** button to return to the Direct Transfer menu.



Only JPEG images can be downloaded as wallpaper for a computer. On the Windows platform, the files are automatically created as BMP images.

The option selected with the ⎙ button is retained even when the camera's power is turned off.
The previous setting will be in effect the next time the Direct Transfer menu is displayed. The image selection screen will appear directly when the [Select & Transfer] or the [Wallpaper] option was last selected.

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

Safety Precautions

Be sure to read, understand and follow the safety precautions below when using the camera, in order to prevent injury, burns or electrical shock to yourself and others.

Be sure to also read the safety precautions listed in the *Advanced Camera User Guide*.

⚠ Warnings

- Do not trigger the flash in close proximity to human or animal eyes.
- Store this equipment out of the reach of children and infants.
- Avoid dropping or subjecting the camera to severe impacts. Do not touch the flash portion of the camera if it has been damaged.
- Stop operating the equipment immediately if it emits smoke or noxious-fumes.
- Do not handle the power cord if your hands are wet.
- Use only recommended batteries and accessories.
- The battery charger and compact power adapter are designed for exclusive use with your camera. Do not use it with other products or batteries.

⚠ Caution

- Do not sit with the camera in a back pocket as it may cause the camera to malfunction or damage the LCD monitor.

PRINTED IN THE EU

© 2005 CANON INC.

Great camera. Great shots.
What about the prints?

Printing has never been easier.
Simply connect your Canon digital camera to a Canon SELPHY CP Compact Photo Printer, and create beautiful, borderless photos in seconds.

you can
Canon

PictBridge

DIRECT PRINT

you can
Canon

CANON
iMAGE
GATEWAY

REGISTRATION GUIDE

CANON iMAGE GATEWAY

Open up a world of online digital photo fun and creativity

Presenting CANON iMAGE GATEWAY - the brilliantly creative way to get the best from your Canon digital camera and the internet.

An exciting online service, CANON iMAGE GATEWAY lets you create and send beautiful digital photo albums in just a few clicks. Plus CANON iMAGE GATEWAY supports the My Camera* function on Canon digital cameras - letting you download free original images and sounds into your camera.

Create and send fun online albums

Use CANON iMAGE GATEWAY to create and send brilliant online photo albums. Build your own albums around themes such as birthdays, holidays and celebrations, add your own sound files or commentaries and more. Then email the results to friends and family so they can see and share them, page by page, online.

Bring your camera to life

CANON iMAGE GATEWAY's My Camera options make it easy to download or upload great start-up images and sounds to personalise your Canon digital camera just how you like.

Order fantastic photo prints**

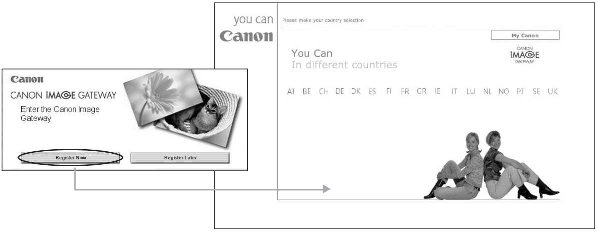
With CANON iMAGE GATEWAY you can order top quality photo prints from your online albums, 24/7. Just select your pictures, enter your payment details and relax - your brilliant prints will be mailed to you and your chosen recipients, so everyone can enjoy them.

* My Camera function is not supported on all camera models

** May not be available at time of print, please check your local CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site for details

Accessing CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from your Canon Camera's Software ZoomBrowser EX/ImageBrowser***

The first time you open ZoomBrowser EX on your PC or ImageBrowser on your Macintosh, after installing it, you will see the following screen.


Canon
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Register Now
Register Later
you can
Canon
My Canon
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
You Can
In different countries
AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GR IE IT LU NL NO PT SE UK

Enter the Canon Image Gateway

Please make your country selection

If you wish to register for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, click the **Register Now** button, you will then be taken to the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY registration page and will need to follow the instructions given to register.

If you do not wish to register, please click the **Register Later** button. You can register later via the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY menu contained in the ZoomBrowser EX **Internet**, or your ImageBrowser **Internet** toolbar menu. (Please refer to the section on **Registering for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from ZoomBrowser EX/ImageBrowser**).

Note: You must register before you are able to use the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site.

[4]**Please Note:** To use Movie upload function, you must first download and install the Movie Upload Task which is available from **My Account** > **Download Software** Section of the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site.

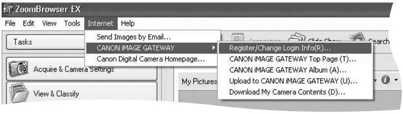
*** The CANON iMAGE GATEWAY service is currently only available in the European countries listed below:
United Kingdom, Deutschland, France, Italia, Suomi, Danmark, Nederland, Sverige,Schweiz, Norge, Eire, Belgie, Österreich, España, Luxembourg, Ελλάδα, Portugal

1 Registering for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from ZoomBrowser EX

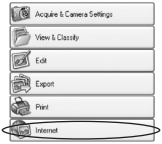
If you have selected **Register Later** from the splash screen and would like to register for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, please follow the instructions below.

You can register via the **CANON iMAGE GATEWAY** menu contained in the ZoomBrowser EX Internet task bar menu, or by selecting the **Internet button** on the **Task Area.**

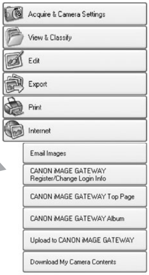
ZoomBrowser EX Toolbar Menu


ZoomBrowser EX
File
Edit
View
Tools
Internet
Help
Tasks
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
My Pictures
Send Images by Email...
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Canon Digital Camera Homepage...
Register/Change Login Info(R)...
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Top Page (T)...
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Album (A)...
Upload to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY (U)...
Download My Camera Contents (D)...
Search

Task Area

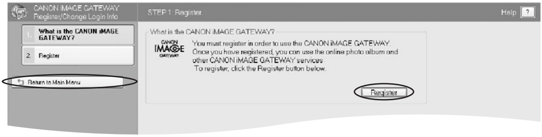

Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet

Internet Task Area


Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
Email Images
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Register/Change Login Info
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Top Page
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Album
Upload to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Download My Camera Contents

i) Click on CANON iMAGE GATEWAY **Register/Change Login Info** from the **Internet Task Area** or by selecting from the Internet toolbar menu.

You can select to **Register** from the **Task Area** or below the description of CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.


CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Register/Change Login Info
STEP 1: Register
Help ?
1. What is the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY?
2. Register
Return to Main Menu
What is the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY?
CANON IMAGE GATEWAY
Register

You must register in order to use the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY. Once you have registered, you can use the online photo album and other CANON iMAGE GATEWAY services.
To register, click the Register button below.

ii) Once you click on **Register**, a web page will open and it will start an Internet session so that you can complete online registration for accessing CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

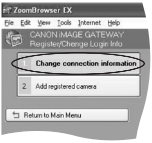
You will then need to click on the **Registration** button in CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and follow the instructions given to **Register**. You will need to provide a valid email address for registration.
Upon successful registration, a username and password will be sent to your email address.

Once you are registered, you can use the **Internet** button on the **Task Area** or toolbar menu to access the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site and services from ZoomBrowser EX.

Once you have registered you will then be able to add additional products to your account from the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY **Register/Change Login Info Task.**

Please Note: You can register multiple products on your account, but only one account per email address is possible.

iii) **Edit Connection**


ZoomBrowser EX
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Register/Change Login Info
1. Change connection information
2 Add registered camera
Return to Main Menu

You can change your user connection information to CANON IMAGE GATEWAY. If you have changed your username and password in the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site, you will then be able to enter your new username and password in this section, to enable you to connect to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

Please note Changes to your username and password are only possible thorough the CANON IMAGE GATEWAY site and not through ZoomBrowser EX.

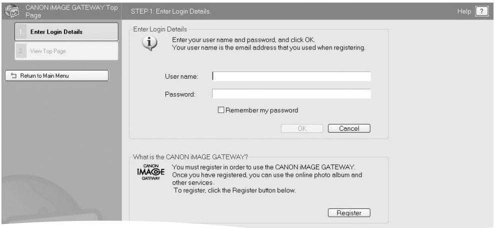
Note: You must register before you can access **CANON iMAGE GATEWAY** and other functions.

2 Using CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from your ZoomBrowser EX Software (Windows)

The ZoomBrowser EX Internet Menu allows you to:

i) Email Images
Please refer to your Software Starter Guide for instructions on how to email images.

ii) View your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Top Page
In the **Task Area** or from the toolbar menu, select **Internet**, then select **CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Top Page**.


CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Top Page
STEP 1: Enter Login Details.
Help ?
1. Enter Login Details
2. View Top Page
Return to Main Menu
Enter Login Details
User name:
Password:
☐ Remember my password
OK
Cancel
What is the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY?
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Register

Enter your user name and password, and click OK.
Your user name is the email address that you used when registering.

You must register in order to use the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.
Once you have registered, you can use the online photo album and other services.
To register, click the Register button below.

iii) Enter Your Login Details
Enter your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY login (username and password details that you were sent following registration) in the boxes provided.

These details will be used in future when uploading images from ZoomBrowser EX.

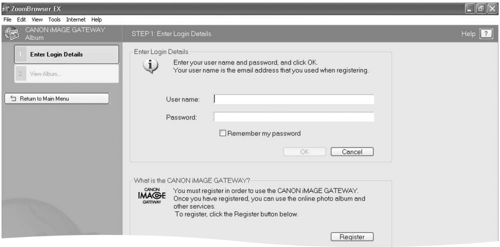
Selecting the **Remember my password** checkbox will enable ZoomBrowser EX to store your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY password so you will not need to re-enter these details each time you wish to access CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

iv) View Top Page
Click this button to log on to your workspace area on the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

If you are not already registered for the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, you can click the Register button as previously explained in (Registering for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from ZoomBrowser EX.)

3 View your Album

In the **Task Area** or from the toolbar menu, select **Internet**, then select **CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Album**.


ZoomBrowser EX
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Album
STEP 1: Enter Login Details.
Help ?
1. Enter Login Details
2. View Album...
Return to Main Menu
Enter Login Details
User name:
Password:
OK
Cancel
What is the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY?
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Register

Enter your user name and password, and click OK.
Your user name is the email address that you used when registering.

☐ Remember my password

You must register in order to use the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.
Once you have registered, you can use the online photo album and other services.
To register, click the Register button below.

i) Enter Your Login Details
Enter your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY login (username and password) details in the boxes provided.

ii) View Album
Click this button to log on to your album on the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and view your images.

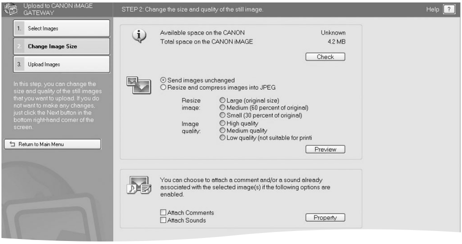
If you are not already registered for the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, you can click the Register button as previously explained in (Registering for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from ZoomBrowser EX.)

4 Upload images to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY

In the **Task Area** or from the toolbar menu, select **Internet**, and then select **Upload to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY**.

You can use this task to upload to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY still images and movies that have been shot with a Canon camera.

Select **Upload Images to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY** on the **Internet** menu in the **Task Area**.



STEP 2: Change the size and quality of the still image.

In this step, you can change the size and quality of the still images that you want to upload. If you do not want to make any changes, just click the Next button in the bottom right-hand corner of the screen.

Available space on the CANON Unknown
Total space on the CANON iMAGE 4.2 MB

● Send images unchanged
○ Resize and compress images into JPEG

Resize image:
○ Large (original size)
○ Medium (60 percent of original)
○ Small (30 percent of original)

Image quality:
○ High quality
○ Medium quality
○ Low quality (not suitable for printi

You can choose to attach a comment and/or a sound already associated with the selected image(s) if the following options are enabled.

☐ Attach Comments
☐ Attach Sounds

i) Select Images
Click this step to select the images(s) you want to upload. Both JPEG images & Movie[4] files can be uploaded. You cannot upload RAW images.

ii) Change Image Size
Click this button to change the size of the images to be uploaded and also to add comments and sounds to the images you wish to upload. The images you have selected for upload appear at the bottom of the page.

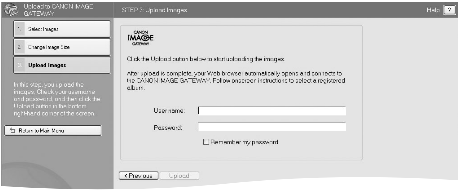
iii) **Attach Comments**
Select this option if you would like to upload an image with comments attached. If no comment has been attached to the image, you can add your comments in the Properties Window that appears when you click the **Properties** button.

iv) **Attach Sounds**
Select this option if you would like to upload an image with a sound file attached to it. If no sound file has been attached to the image, you can add one by clicking the **Properties** button.

Please Note: This task does not support images larger than 5,000 x 5,000 pixels, Raw images and Images with file names longer than 64 bytes.

v) **Upload Images**
Enter your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY login (username and password) details in the boxes provided.

Click the **Upload** button to start the upload process.


Upload to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
STEP 3: Upload Images.
Help ?
1. Select Images
2. Change Image Size
3. Upload Images
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Return to Main Menu
< Previous
Upload

In this step, you upload the images. Check your username and password, and then click the Upload button in the bottom right-hand corner of the screen.

Click the Upload button below to start uploading the images.

After upload is complete, your Web browser automatically opens and connects to the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY. Follow onscreen instructions to select a registered album.

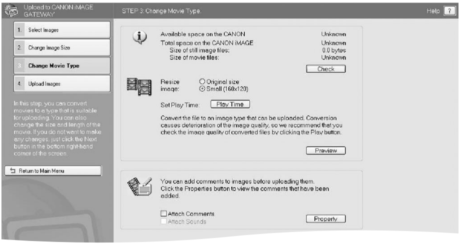
User name:
Password:
☐ Remember my password

Please click on ? icon for further information on Uploading Images and changing the Still Image Size.

vi) Change Movie[4] Format

You can convert a movie into a format suitable for upload. Before uploading images you must first convert them into a format that can be uploaded. You can also specify the image size and play time during conversion.

Please ensure that Quick Time is installed.



In this step, you can convert movies to a type that is suitable for uploading. You can also change the size and length of the movie. If you do not want to make any changes, just click the Next button in the bottom right-hand corner of the screen.

Available space on the CANON Unknown
Total space on the CANON iMAGE Unknown
Size of still image files: 0.0 bytes
Size of movie files: Unknown

Resize image: ○ Original size ● Small (160x120)

Set Play Time:

Convert the file to an image type that can be uploaded. Conversion causes deterioration of the image quality, so we recommend that you check the image quality of converted files by clicking the Play button.

You can add comments to images before uploading them. Click the Properties button to view the comments that have been added.

☐ Attach Comments
☐ Attach Sounds

Click on the **Check** button to make sure that the total size of the files you wish to upload does not exceed the available space.

Reduce the size of your movies[4] by selecting either original size or small (160 x 120) size. **Please note** that movies[4], which exceed 320 x 240 or 352 x 288, cannot be uploaded unless the size is reduced. Images larger than this will automatically be reduced to 320 x 240 upon conversion.

By clicking on **Play Time** you can reduce the size of the Movie[4] file that you wish to upload. To learn how to use this feature please view the help file by clicking the ? icon.

To start the conversion click on the **Check** button and the compressed file size is displayed above the **Check** button.

You can view the compressed movie[4] by clicking the **Preview** button.

We recommend that you view your movie[4] before uploading to check the quality as conversion can lead to deterioration in image quality.

You can attach comments to the images you wish to upload. Please click on ? icon for further information.

[4]**Please Note:** To use Movie upload function, you must first download and install the **Image Gateway Upload Task** which is available from **My Account** > **Download Software** section of the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site.

5 Download My Camera**** Contents

In the **Task Area** or from the toolbar menu select **Internet**, and then select **Download My Camera Contents**.

i) **Enter Login Details**
Enter your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY login (username and password) details in the boxes provided.

ii) **Download My Camera**** Contents**
Click this button to view the page on the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Web site that contains camera sound files and camera frames that you can download.

The graphics and sound files you can download are for features such as *Start-up Image*, *Start-up Sound*, *Shutter Sound*, *Operation Sound* and *Selftimer Sound*. You can also browse and download a collection of graphics and sound files that make up a defined Theme. Once you have downloaded these files, you can upload them to your camera through the **Camera Window**.

If you are not already registered for the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, you can click the **Register** button as previously explained in Registering for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from ZoomBrowser EX.

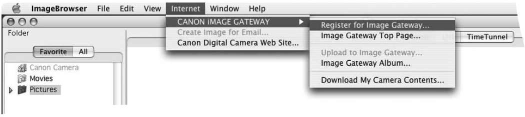
**** Note: Not All Cameras support My Camera functions. To find out more about **My Camera** function, please refer to your Camera User Guide.

1 Registering for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from ImageBrowser

If you have selected **Register Later** from the splash screen and would like to register for **CANON iMAGE GATEWAY**, please follow the instructions below.

You can register via the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY menu contained in the ImageBrowser **Internet** toolbar menu.

ImageBrowser Toolbar Menu


ImageBrowser
File
Edit
View
Internet
Window
Help
Folder
Favorite
All
Canon Camera
Movies
Pictures
CANON iMAGE GATEWAY
Create Image for Email...
Canon Digital Camera Web Site...
Register for Image Gateway...
Image Gateway Top Page...
Upload to Image Gateway...
Image Gateway Album...
Download My Camera Contents...
TimeTunnel

i) Click on **Register for Image Gateway** from the **Internet** toolbar menu.

ii) Once you click on **Register**, a web page will open and it will start an Internet session so that you can complete online registration for accessing CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

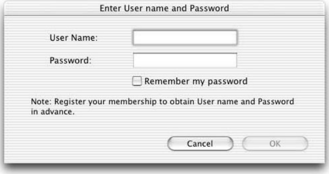
You will then need to click on the **Registration** button in CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and follow the instructions given to register. You will need to provide a valid email address for registration. Upon successful registration, a username and password will be sent to your email address.

Once you are registered, you can use the **Internet** toolbar menu to access the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site and services from ImageBrowser.

Please Note: You can register multiple products on your account, but only one account per email address is possible.

2 View your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Top Page

From the toolbar menu, select **Internet**, then select **Image Gateway Top Page**.



Enter User name and Password

User Name:

Password:

☐ Remember my password

Note: Register your membership to obtain User name and Password in advance.

i) Enter Your Login Details

Enter your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY login (username and password details that you were sent following registration) in the boxes provided and click OK.

These details will be used in future when uploading images from ImageBrowser.

Selecting the **Remember my password** checkbox will enable ImageBrowser to store your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY password so you will not need to re-enter these details each time you wish to access CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

3 Upload images and Movies[4] to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY

From the toolbar menu select **Internet**, then select **Upload to Image Gateway**.

You can use this task to upload to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY still images and movies[4] that have been shot with a Canon camera.

i) Select Your Images or Movies[4]

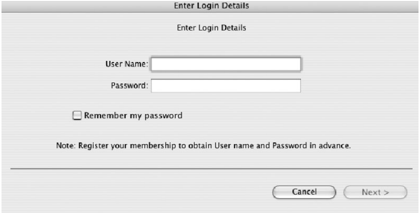
Select the still image(s) or movies[4] you want to upload.
Please note that if you select a still image the movie format window will not appear.

Both JPEG images & Movie[4] files can be uploaded. You cannot upload RAW images.

ii) Enter Login Details

Enter your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY login (username and password) details in the boxes provided.

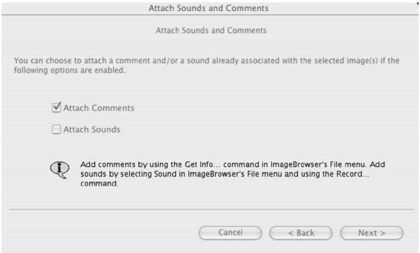
Click the **Next** button to continue or select the **Cancel** button to exit the upload process.


Enter Login Details
Enter Login Details
User Name:
Password:
☐ Remember my password
Cancel
Next >

Note: Register your membership to obtain User name and Password in advance.

iii) Attach Sounds and Comments

You can attach sounds or comments to upload with your images.



Attach Sounds and Comments

Attach Sounds and Comments

You can choose to attach a comment and/or a sound already associated with the selected image(s) if the following options are enabled.

☑ Attach Comments

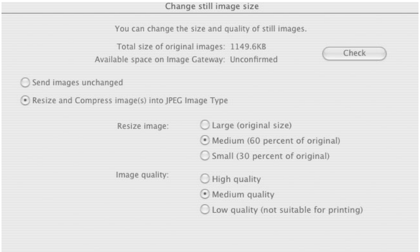
☐ Attach Sounds

Add comments by using the Get Info... command in ImageBrowser's File menu. Add sounds by selecting Sound in ImageBrowser's File menu and using the Record... command.

Click **Next** to continue, click **Back** to go to the previous step, or **Cancel** to exit the upload process.

iv) Change Still Image Size

You can then choose to change the size of the images to be uploaded.



Change still image size

You can change the size and quality of still images.

Total size of original images: 1149.6KB

Available space on Image Gateway: Unconfirmed

○ Send images unchanged

● Resize and Compress image(s) into JPEG Image Type

Resize image:
○ Large (original size)
● Medium (60 percent of original)
○ Small (30 percent of original)

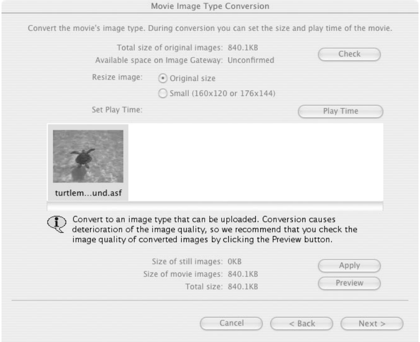
Image quality:
○ High quality
● Medium quality
○ Low quality (not suitable for printing)

v) Movie[4] Format Type Conversion

You can convert a movie into a format suitable for upload.

Before uploading movies you must first convert them into a format that can be uploaded. You can also specify the movie size and play time during conversion.

Please ensure that Quick Time is installed.



Movie Image Type Conversion

Convert the movie's image type. During conversion you can set the size and play time of the movie.

Total size of original images: 840.1KB

Available space on Image Gateway: Unconfirmed

Resize image: ● Original size

○ Small (160x120 or 176x144)

Set Play Time:

turtlem...und.asf

Convert to an image type that can be uploaded. Conversion causes deterioration of the image quality, so we recommend that you check the image quality of converted images by clicking the Preview button.

Size of still images: 0KB

Size of movie images: 840.1KB

Total size: 840.1KB

Click on the **Check** button to make sure that the total size of the files you wish to upload does not exceed the available space on CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

Reduce the size of your movies by selecting either original size or small (160 x 120 or 176 x 144) size. **Please note** that movies, which exceed 320 x 240 or 352 x 288, cannot be uploaded unless the size is reduced. Images larger than this will automatically be reduced to 320 x 240 upon conversion.

By clicking on **Play Time** you can reduce the size of the Movie file that you wish to upload by reducing it's play time.

Drag the clipping range slider to reduce the size of the movie file by reducing its play time.

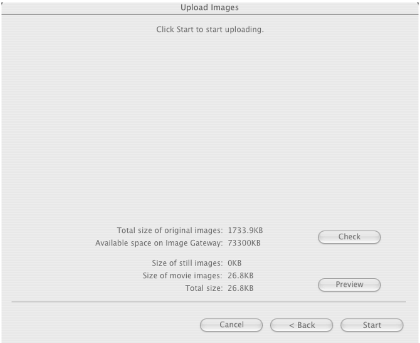
To start the conversion click on **Apply**, and the compressed file size is displayed besides the **Apply** button.

You can view the compressed movie by clicking on **Preview**.

We recommend that you view your movie before uploading to check the quality as conversion can lead to deterioration in image quality.

vi) Upload Images

Click this button to start the upload process.



Upload Images

Click Start to start uploading.

Total size of original images: 1733.9KB
Available space on Image Gateway: 73300KB

Size of still images: 0KB
Size of movie images: 26.8KB
Total size: 26.8KB

Click **Next** to continue, click **Back** to go to the previous step, or **Cancel** to exit the upload process.

[4] **Please Note:** To use Movie upload function, you must first download and install the **Image Gateway Upload Task** which is available from **My Account** > **Download Software** section of the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY site.

4 View your Album

From the toolbar menu, select **Internet**, then select **ImageGateway Album.**

Enter Login Details

Enter your Canon Image Gateway login (username and password) details in the boxes provided and click OK.

5 Download My Camera**** contents

From the toolbar menu, select **Internet**, then select **Download My Camera Contents.**

i) Enter Login Details
Enter your CANON iMAGE GATEWAY login (username and password) details in the boxes provided and click OK.

The graphics and sound files you can download are for features such as *Start-up Image*, *Start-up Sound*, *Shutter Sound*, *Operation Sound* and *Selftimer Sound*. You can also browse and download a collection of graphics and sound files that make up a defined Theme. Once you have downloaded these files, you can upload them to your camera through the **Camera Window**.

Once you click OK a web page will open and it will start an Internet session so that you can download **My Camera Contents** from the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

**** Note: Not All Cameras support My Camera functions. To find out more about **My Camera** function, please refer to your Camera User Guide.

Log-on and make the most of CANON iMAGE GATEWAY

For more information about CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, to find out how to make the most of this free service or to take the guided tour of CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, visit **www.cig.canon-europe.com**

Here you can make the most of your digital camera and the internet, with exciting features such as...

- **Online albums**
- **Photo sharing**
- **Fun sounds and images for *your* camera, and**
- **Fast prints from your digital photographs**

CANON
iMAGE
GATEWAY

CANON iMAGE GATEWAY

Canon Inc.
30-2, Shimomaruko 3-Chome,
Ohta-Ku, Tokyo 146-8501,
Japan
www.canon.com

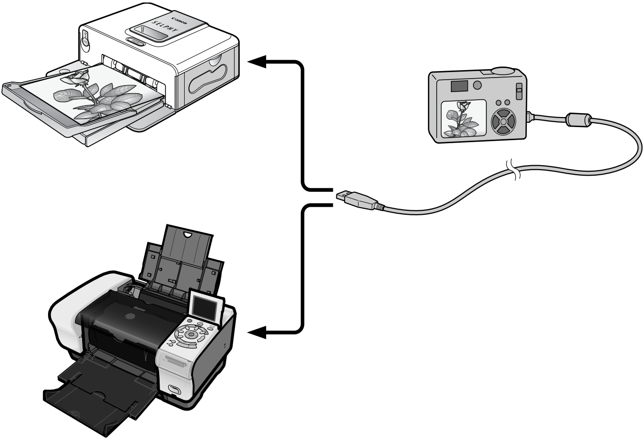
Europe, Africa and Middle East
Canon Europa N.V.
P.O.Box 2262, 1180 EG Amstelveen,
The Netherlands
www.canon-europe.com

CEL-DSC5.5_0805EN

you can
Canon

Canon

Direct Print User Guide



You don’t even need a computer !
Just connect your camera to your printer and print

PictBridge Exif Print DPOF™ DIRECT PRINT BUBBLE JET DIRECT

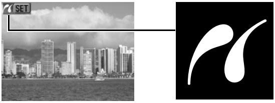
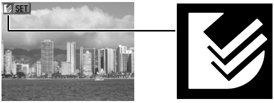
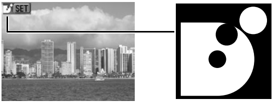
Introduction

—Confirm Your Printer Model and the Section that Applies to You

Operations differ according to your printer model.
According to the procedure below, confirm the section and page you should read in this user guide.

1 Connect the camera to the printer with an appropriate cable and confirm the icon displayed in the camera's LCD monitor.

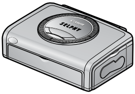
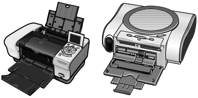
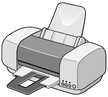
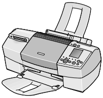
- For instructions on camera and printer connection methods, please refer to page 8.

Confirming the section that applies to you	Icons displayed in the camera's LCD monitor
	
	
	

- If one of the aforementioned icons does not appear, the connected printer cannot be used.
- When the printer is ready for printing, the ⎙∿ button lights in blue. The ⎙∿ button blinks during printing.

2 Confirm your printer model.

3 Read the page below.

Printer model		Refer to the sections indicated
SELPHY CP series		Page 10 "Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using *PictBridge*"
PIXMA/ SELPHY DS series		Page 31 "Printing with Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series/ SELPHY DS series) using *PictBridge*"
Non-Canon printers*		Page 50 "Printing with Non-Canon, *PictBridge* Compliant Printers"
SELPHY CP series		Page 51 "Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using *Canon Direct Print*"
Bubble Jet printers		Page 68 "Printing with Bubble Jet Printers using *Bubble Jet Direct*"

* *Please also refer to the user guide that came with your printer.*

For the latest information regarding connections between Canon printers and cameras, please refer to the following URL:
http://web.canon.jp/Imaging/BeBit-e.html
http://www.canon.com/pictbridge/

***PictBridge* Compliance**

This camera complies with the industry standard “PictBridge”*. This allows you to also connect your camera to non-Canon *PictBridge* compliant printers and print images with simple operations using the camera buttons.

* PictBridge: *PictBridge* is an industry standard for direct printing that allows you to print images without using a computer by directly connecting digital cameras and digital camcorders (hereafter “camera”) to a printer, regardless of the devices’ brand and model.

Disclaimer

- No part of this guide may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without the prior written permission of Canon.
- Canon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware described herein at any time without prior notice.
- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained in this guide is accurate and complete, no liability can be accepted for any errors or omissions.
- Canon makes no warranties for damages resulting from corrupted or lost data due to a mistaken operation or malfunction of the camera, the software, the memory cards, personal computers, peripheral devices, or use of non-Canon memory cards.

Trademark Acknowledgements

- Names and products in this guide may be registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.
- Copyright © 2005 Canon Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Direct Print 6

- **Allows for Printing without the Use of a Computer 6**
- **Various Printing Operations Can Be Performed 6**
- **You Can Also Perform the Following Printing Operations . . 7**
  - Printing Movies (Movie Print) 7
  - Printing Multiple Images on a Sheet of Paper 7
  - ID Photo Print. 7

Connecting the Camera to the Printer. 8

Disconnecting the Camera and the Printer. 9

Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using *PictBridge* . . .10

- **Printing 10**
  - Easy Print. 10
  - Print after Changing the Print Settings. 11
- **Selecting Print Settings 13**
  - Setting the Date and the File Number Printing Option 13
  - Setting the Print Effect 14
  - Setting the Number of Copies 14
  - Setting the Printing Area (Trimming) 15
  - Selecting the Paper Settings 19
    - Printing Multiple Images on a Sheet of Paper 21
    - Printing by Specifying the Print Size (ID Photo Print) 22
    - Printing Images in the Fixed Size 24
  - Printing Movies (Movie Print) 25
- **Printing with DPOF Print Settings 27**
- **List of Messages 30**

Printing with Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series/ SELPHY DS series) using *PictBridge* 31

Printing 31
Easy Print 31
Print after Changing the Print Settings 32
Selecting Print Settings. 34
Setting the Date Printing Option 34
Setting the Print Effect. 35
Setting the Number of Copies 36
Setting the Printing Area (Trimming) 37
Selecting the Paper Settings 41
Printing Multiple Images on a Sheet of Paper. 43
Printing with DPOF Print Settings 45
List of Messages 48

Printing with Non-Canon, *PictBridge* Compliant Printers . . . 50

Printing 50

Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using *Canon Direct Print*. 51

Printing 51
Easy Print 51
Print after Changing the Print Settings 51
Selecting Print Settings. 53
Setting the Number of Copies 53
Setting the Print Style (Image, Borders and Date) 53
Setting the Printing Area (Trimming) 55
Printing by Specifying the Print Size (ID Photo Print) 59
Printing Movies (Movie Print) 62
Printing with DPOF Print Settings 64
List of Messages 67

Printing with Bubble Jet Printers using *Bubble Jet Direct* . . 68

Printing 68

Setting the Print Style 69

Settings that Can Be Set with the Camera 71

SELPHY CP Series Printers using *PictBridge* 71

Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series/SELPHY DS series) using *PictBridge*. 72

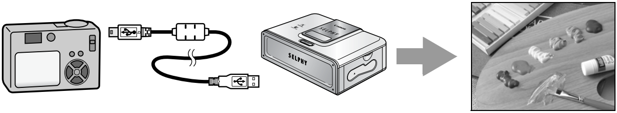
SELPHY CP Series Printers using *Canon Direct Print*

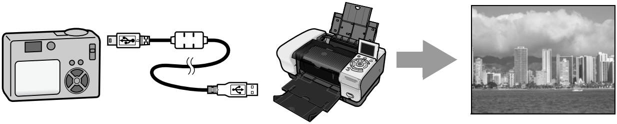
Bubble Jet Printers using *Bubble Jet Direct* 74

Direct Print

Allows for Printing without the Use of a Computer

Connect your camera to the printer with the appropriate cable.
Image selection and printing is operated from the camera.

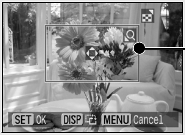




Various Printing Operations Can Be Performed*

Prints to cover the entire surface of the paper.
Or, prints with a border.

Adds the date.



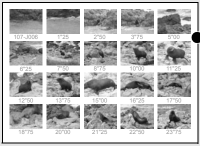
Specifies which portion of the image to print. (Trimming)

Multiple pictures can be printed at once. (DPOF print setting)

* *Some settings may not be selectable for Non-Canon printers.*

You Can Also Perform the Following Printing Operations

Printing Movies (Movie Print)



Movie frames can be extracted at fairly regular intervals and printed on a single sheet of paper (p. 25 or p. 62).

- Capable printers: Canon SELPHY CP Series Printers

Printing Multiple Images on a Sheet of Paper

Compositions of multiple images you specify of the same dimensions can be printed on a single sheet of paper (p. 21 or p. 43).

Moreover, the DPOF print setting* function allows you to separately print different images by specifying the number of frames to be printed per image.

- Capable printers: Printers using *PictBridge* (Including non-Canon Printers) (This function is not available on some printers.)

ID Photo Print

An image can be trimmed, laid out and printed as ID photos (p. 22 or p. 59).

- Capable printers: Canon SELPHY CP Series Printers

Depending on the printer model, an additional printing operation is available as follow:

- Printing images in a fixed size (p. 24)

* *DPOF print settings*
This function allows you to preset the images and the number of copies using the camera button controls. The settings are recorded to a memory card. Please refer to the Camera User Guide for instructions on setting procedure. This guide explains how to print images with DPOF print settings.
DPOF=Digital Print Order Format

Connecting the Camera to the Printer

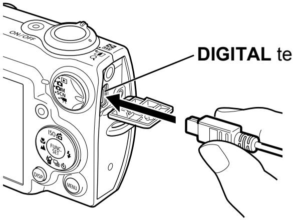
Connect the camera to the printer. For instructions on printer and camera operation methods, refer to their respective user guides.

1 Set one of the following into the camera.

- Compact power adapter (sold separately or supplied with the camera)
- Fully charged battery
- New batteries

2 Place paper, ink cassette/cartridge, etc. into the printer.

3 Connect the camera to the printer with the appropriate interface cable supplied with the camera.



DIGITAL terminal

Camera: Connect the cable to the **DIGITAL** terminal.
Printer: Refer to the printer's user guide.

This illustration shows the DIGITAL IXUS 750 as an example.

Some printers require specific connection cables which differ from the above cable. Please refer to the printer's user guide.

4 Turn the printer's power on.

5 Set the camera to Playback mode and turn the power on.

Depending on the camera model, the camera's power will automatically turn on when the printer's power is turned on.

The following operations are not available during a camera/printer connection.

- Language settings that use the **SET** button and the **MENU** button.
- Resetting the camera's settings to default.

Disconnecting the Camera and the Printer

1 **Detach the cable from the printer.**

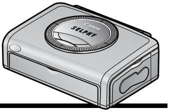
Pull out the cable while holding the connector plug. Do not pull out by the cable.

2 **Turn the camera’s power off.**

3 **Detach the cable from the camera.**

Pull out the cable while holding the connector plug. Do not pull out by the cable.

Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using *PictBridge*

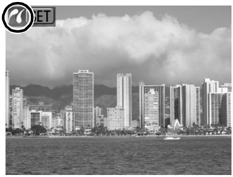


Printing

Easy Print

You can print images by pressing only one button after connecting the camera to the printer.

1



Make sure that displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

2

Display the images you wish to print and press the ⎙∿ button.

If you wish to change the print settings, see *Print after Changing the Print Settings* (p. 11).

Print after Changing the Print Settings

You can change the print settings before printing.

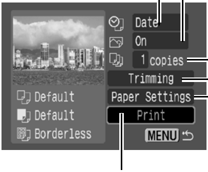
1 Make sure that displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

If ☑ displays on the LCD monitor, please refer to ☑ *Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using Canon Direct Print* (p. 51).

2 Display the images you wish to print and press the SET button.

The print order screen appears.

Depending on the printer model, some setting options may not display.



Sets the print effect (p. 14)

Sets the date and the file number for printing (p. 13)

Sets the number of copies (p. 14)

Sets the trimming portion (p. 15)

Sets the paper size, type and layout (p. 19)

Starts the printing process

Print Order Screen

3 Select print settings as needed.

4 Select [Print] and press the SET button.

- The image will start to print and, when it is completely finished, the display will revert to the standard playback mode.
- If you press the **MENU** button, the display will revert to the standard playback mode and printing will not take place.

- You cannot print the RAW images.
- It may not be possible to play back or print images shot with a different camera.
- You may not be able to print if the memory card holds a large number of images (about 1000).

Cancel Printing

- To cancel printing between images, press the **SET** button. A confirmation dialog will display. Select [OK] and press the **SET** button. The printer will stop printing the current image and eject the paper.

Printing Errors

- An error message appears if an error occurs for some reason during the printing process. When the error is resolved, printing will automatically resume. If printing does not resume, select [Continue] and press the **SET** button. If [Continue] cannot be selected, select [Stop], press the **SET** button and restart the print job. See *List of Messages* (p. 30) for details.

Selecting Print Settings

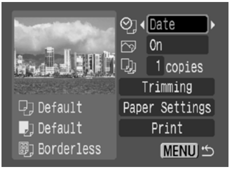
Depending on the camera model, the screens that will be displayed will vary. Please also refer to the user guide that came with your printer.

Default Setting

- The Default option is a fixed setting of the printer.
- The [Date/File No.], [Print Effect], paper setting [Paper Size], [Paper Type] and [Page Layout] options are available.

Setting the Date and the File Number Printing Option

1



Select [🕒], then select the date and the file number printing option.

You can set the date and the file number printing as follows:

Date	Prints only the date.
File No.	Prints only the file number.
Both	Prints both the date and the file number.
Off	Prints neither date nor file number.
Default	Prints using the default setting.

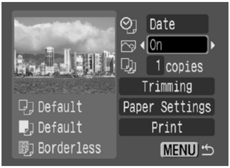
If you select an image which has had the shooting date embedded in it using a camera with the Postcard Date Imprint mode, [🕒] will be set to [Off]. If you select [Date], [File No.] or [Both], the date/file number will be printed on the embedded information which is also printed.

Setting the Print Effect

This function uses the camera's shooting information to optimize the image data, yielding high quality prints. You can select the following print effects.

On	Uses the camera's shooting information to deliver optimum prints.
Off	Prints without any effects.
Default	Print settings differ according to your printer model.

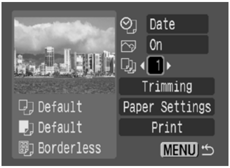
1


Date
On
1 copies
Trimming
Paper Settings
Print
Default
Default
Borderless
MENU

Select [◙] and choose a print effect option.

Setting the Number of Copies

1


Date
On
1
Trimming
Paper Settings
Print
Default
Default
Borderless
MENU

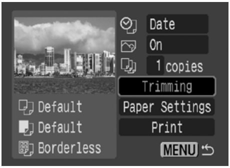
Select [⧉] and set the number of prints.

1 to 99 copies can be set.

Setting the Printing Area (Trimming)

You can specify a portion of the image for printing.
Please set [Paper Settings] (p. 19) before setting the trimming settings. If [Paper Settings] is changed after having made the trimming settings, you must select the settings again.

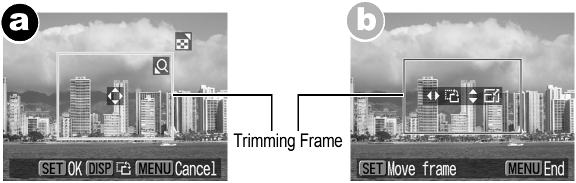
1


Date
On
1 copies
Trimming
Default
Paper Settings
Default
Print
Borderless
MENU

Select [Trimming] and press the SET button.

The trimming frame will appear at the center of the image. If a trimming setting has already been selected for the image, the frame will appear around the previously selected portion.

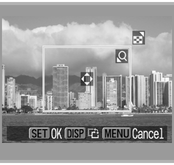
The trimming setting screen differs depending on the camera model. Check which of the following screens appear before selecting settings.


a
SET OK DISP MENU Cancel
Trimming Frame
b
SET Move frame
MENU End

➡Steps 2a and 3a

➡Steps 2b and 3b

* Proceed to procedure ⓐ or ⓑ depending on the display screen which appears.



In the case of display screen ⓐ

2a Trim the image.

Changing the Size of the Trimming Frame

- Press the zoom lever or the zoom button to adjust the size of the trimming frame.
- The trimming frame can be changed to a minimum selection of approximately half the displayed image (in width and height) or a maximum selection that is virtually the same size as the image.
- Expanding the trimming frame beyond its maximum size cancels the trimming setting.
- When printing an image that has been magnified using the trimming option, the image quality may become coarser and grainier depending on the level of magnification.

Moving the Trimming Frame

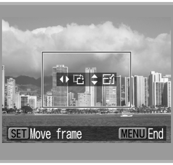
- Move the trimming frame using the omni selector or the up, down, right and left buttons.

Rotating the Trimming Frame

- You can rotate the trimming frame by pressing the **DISP.** (or **DISPLAY**) button.

3a Press the SET button to close the setting menu.

Pressing the **MENU** button cancels the settings.



In the case of display screen ⓑ

2b

Trim the image.

Changing the Size of the Trimming Frame

- Press the up and down buttons to adjust the size of the trimming frame.
- The trimming frame can be changed to a minimum selection of approximately half the displayed image (in width and height) or a maximum selection that is virtually the same size as the image.
- Expanding the trimming frame beyond its maximum size cancels the trimming setting.
- When printing an image that has been magnified using the trimming option, the image quality may become coarser and grainier depending on the level of magnification.

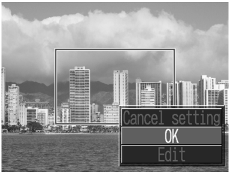
Rotating the Trimming Frame

- You can rotate the trimming frame using the left and right buttons.

Moving the Trimming Frame

- Press the **SET** button and use the up, down, right and left buttons to move the trimming frame. Pressing the **SET** button again allows you to change the size of the frame and to rotate it.

3b



Press the MENU button, select [OK] and press the SET button.

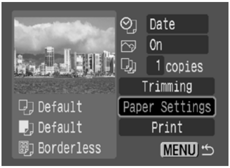
Selecting [Cancel setting] cancels the selected trimming setting. If [Edit] is selected, the display returns to the previous screen.

- The trimming setting only applies to one image.
- The trimming setting is canceled with the following operations.
  - When you set the trimming settings for another image.
  - When you close the Print mode (when you turn the camera power off, change the camera mode, or detach the connection cable).
- The shooting date or part of the date which has been embedded in images using a camera with the Postcard Date Imprint mode may not be printed properly depending on the trimming setting.

- The paper size and page layout settings determine the shape of the trimming frame.
- Please use the LCD monitor to set the trimming settings. The trimming frame may not display correctly on a TV screen.

Selecting the Paper Settings

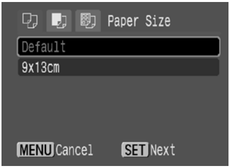
1


Date
On
1 copies
Trimming
Paper Settings
Print
Default
Default
Borderless
MENU

Select [Paper Settings] and press the SET button.

The paper size setting screen appears.

2


Paper Size
Default
9x13cm
MENU Cancel
SET Next

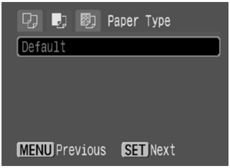
Select a paper size and press the SET button.

The default settings and specified paper cassette size are displayed.

The paper type setting screen appears.

* *Paper sizes vary according to region.*

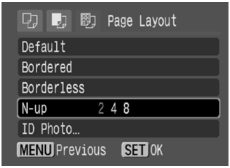
3


Paper Type
Default
MENU Previous
SET Next

Press the SET button.

The page layout screen appears.

4



Page Layout

Default

Bordered

Borderless

N-up 2 4 8

ID Photo…

MENU Previous SET OK

Select a layout.

The following layout can be selected.

Default	Print settings differ according to your printer model.
Bordered	Prints with a border.
Borderless	Prints right to the edges of the paper.
N-up	Prints 2, 4 or (8*) images on a single sheet of paper (p. 21).
ID Photo	Specifies the print size and print portion of an image or a whole image as an ID photo (p. 22).
Fixed Size	Prints by specifying the print size of the image on a sheet of paper (p. 24).

* *Credit card size paper only*

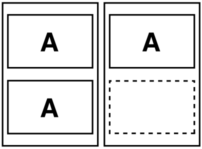
Printing Multiple Images on a Sheet of Paper

Selecting [N-up] in the layout setting (p. 20) will allow you to specify the following layout settings.

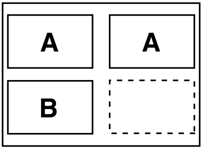
2	2 images (height 2 x width 1) of the same dimensions are arranged on a single sheet of paper.
4	4 images (height 2 x width 2) of the same dimensions are arranged on a single sheet of paper.
8*	8 images (height 4 x width 2) of the same dimensions are arranged on a single sheet of paper or a label sheet.

* This option can only be selected when printing on credit card size paper.

[Printing example 1] Printing 3 copies of image A in 2-up

Number of copies (p. 14)	Image A: [3] copies	
Layout	2	

DPOF print setting (p. 27) allows you to separately print different images by specifying the number of frames to be printed per image.
[Printing example 2] Printing 2 copies of image A and 1 copy of image B in 4-up

DPOF print settings* (p. 27)	Image A: [2] copies Image B: [1] copies	
Layout	4	

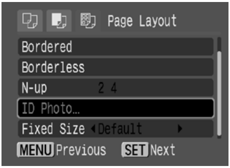
* Please refer to the *Camera User Guide* for instructions on DPOF print setting method.

Printing by Specifying the Print Size (ID Photo Print)

Selecting [ID Photo] in the layout setting (p. 20) will allow you to specify the print size and print portion of an image or a whole image as an ID photo*.

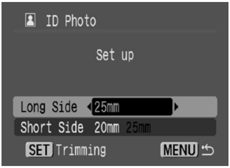
* *Images printed with the ID Photo Print function may not be allowed as a formal certificate photo. Refer to the party (organization) or administration requiring the photo.*

> The print size can be specified for only L (Large) resolution images in the camera connected to the printer.


Page Layout
Bordered
Borderless
N-up 2 4
ID Photo...
Fixed Size Default
MENU Previous
SET Next

Select [ID Photo], then press the SET button.

▼


ID Photo
Set up
SET Trimming
MENU

Long Side 25mm
Short Side 20mm 25mm

Specify the print size by selecting the length of the long side and the short side, then press the SET button.

Specify the size by selecting the length of the long side first, then the short side. See the next table for selectable combinations of the long side length and the short side length.

● Selectable combination

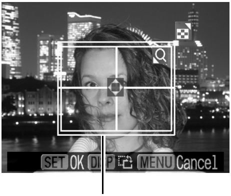
■: Available print size

Short Side

Long Side	20 mm	25 mm	30 mm	35 mm	40 mm	45 mm	50 mm
25 mm	■	■					
30 mm		■	■				
35 mm		■	■	■			
40 mm			■	■	■		
45 mm				■	■	■	
50 mm				■	■	■	■
55 mm					■	■	■
60 mm					■	■	■
70 mm							■

	1.4 inch	1.5 inch	1.8 inch	2.0 inch
1.8 inch	■	■		
2.0 inch			■	■

▼



Trimming Frame

Trim the image to specify the print area.

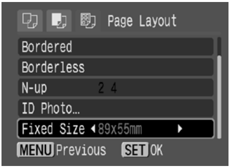
See Step 2 of *Setting the Printing Area (Trimming)* (p. 16 and p. 17) on how to trim the image.

The trimming setting screen differs depending on the camera model. Follow the steps according to the screen that displays on your camera.

- The shape of the trimming frame varies depending on the specified print size.
- Use the LCD monitor to specify the print size settings. The trimming frame may not display correctly on a TV screen.

Printing Images in the Fixed Size

Selecting [Fixed Size] in the layout setting (p. 20) will allow you to print by specifying the print size of the image on a sheet of paper.


Page Layout
Bordered
Borderless
N-up 2 4
ID Photo…
Fixed Size ◀89x55mm ▶
MENU Previous
SET OK

Select the fixed print size required.

Depending on the paper size, you can select print sizes as follows:

Paper size	Print size
Credit Card	You cannot select the print size.
9 × 13 cm (L size)	89 mm × 55 mm Default
10 × 14.8 cm (Postcard size)	7 cm × 10 cm Default
4 in. × 8 in./ 10 × 20 cm (Wide size)	4 in. × 6 in. 7 cm × 10 cm Default

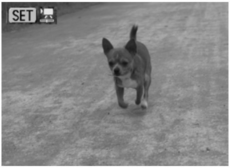
5 **Select a layout and press the SET button. This ends the paper settings operations.**

The display returns to the print order screen.

Printing Movies (Movie Print)

You can print movie frames selected automatically at fairly regular intervals laid out in index style on a single sheet of paper.

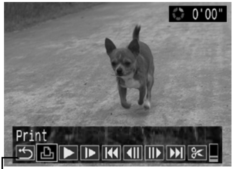
1



Select the movie you want to print, then press the SET button.

The movie control panel appears.

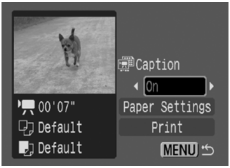
2



Movie Control Panel

Select (Print) and press the SET button.

3


Caption
On
Paper Settings
Print
00'07"
Default
Default
MENU

If necessary, select [On], [Off] or [Default] in (Caption).

If you set (Caption) to [On], you can print the file number and the elapsed time of the frame at the same time.

4 **Select [Print] and press the SET button.**

It may not be possible to play back or print movies shot with a different camera.

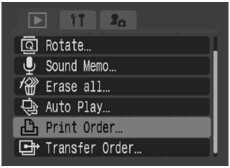
- If you press the button instead of the **SET** button in Step 1, movie print begins.
- The number of printed movie frames per sheet of paper is determined by the paper size shown as follows:
  (Depending on the number of seconds in the movie, there are cases when the number of frames indicated below will not be printed.)
  - Credit card size: 20 frames
  - L size: 42 frames
  - Postcard size: 63 frames
  - Wide size: 84 frames
- Selecting [Paper Settings] and pressing the **SET** button in Step 3 will allow [Paper Size] and [Paper Type] to be selected. However, [Page Layout] cannot be set (p. 20).

Printing with DPOF Print Settings

For instructions on how to set DPOF print settings, please refer to the *DPOF print settings* section of the *Camera User Guide*.

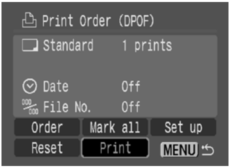
In this section, we will explain how to print several images already specified with DPOF print settings.

1


Rotate...
Sound Memo...
Erase all...
Auto Play...
Print Order...
Transfer Order...

In the [▶ (Play)] menu, select [Print Order] and press the SET button.

2


Print Order (DPOF)
Order
Mark all
Set up
Reset
Print
MENU ↶

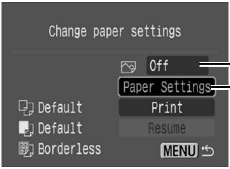
Standard 1 prints

Date Off

File No. Off

Select [Print] and press the SET button.

3


Change paper settings
Off
Paper Settings
Print
Resume
MENU ↶

Default

Default

Borderless

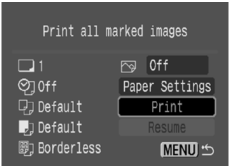
Set the print effect and paper settings as required.

Sets the Print Effect (p. 14)

Selects the Paper Settings* (p. 19)

* *[Page Layout] cannot be set in the [Paper Settings] when [Index] is selected in the [Set up] option in Step 2.*

4


Print all marked images
1
Off
Off
Paper Settings
Default
Print
Default
Resume
Borderless
MENU

Select [Print] and press the SET button.

- The image will start to print and, when it is completely finished, the display will revert to the standard playback mode.
- If the **MENU** button is pressed, the display will revert to the print order screen in Step 2 and printing will not take place.

- To print the date, set the [Date] setting in [Set up] on the screen in Step 2 to [On]. You cannot set the date to print in Step 3.
- When the print type is set to [Index], the [Date] and [File No.] cannot be printed at the same time.
- The ID photo print function cannot be used.
- You cannot print movies.

- The maximum number of images printed on one page in the Index print type depends on the selected paper size.
  - Credit card size: 20 images
  - L size: 42 images
  - Postcard size: 63 images
  - Wide size: 84 images

Cancel Printing

- To cancel printing between images printed, press the **SET** button. A confirmation dialog appears. Select [OK] and press the **SET** button. The printer will stop printing the current image and eject the paper.

Restarting Printing

- Select [Resume] and press the **SET** button. The remaining images can be printed.
- Printing cannot be restarted under the following circumstances.
  - If the print settings have been changed before restarting.
  - If the image for which the print settings were set has been deleted before restarting.
  - If there was very little free space on the memory card when the printing was canceled.

  If these circumstances apply, you can select [Print] and reprint starting from the first image.
- If printing is canceled because the camera battery is depleted, replace with a fully charged battery pack or new batteries, then turn the camera power on again.

  If you intend to use an extended period of time, you are recommended to power the camera with a compact power adapter (sold separately or supplied with the camera).

Printing Errors

- An error message appears if an error occurs for some reason during the printing process. When the error is resolved, printing will automatically resume. If printing does not resume, select [Continue] and press the **SET** button. If [Continue] cannot be selected, select [Stop], press the **SET** button and restart the print job. See *List of Messages* (p. 30) for details.

List of Messages

The following messages may appear on the camera’s LCD monitor when an error occurs during a camera and printer connection. (Depending on the printer model, some messages may not display.)

Please refer to the printer’s user guide for solutions.

No Paper	Paper cassette is incorrectly inserted or out of paper. Or the paper feed is not operating correctly.
No Ink	The ink cassette has not been inserted or has run out of ink.
Paper and ink do not match	The paper and ink are from different sets.
Paper Jam	The paper jammed during printing.
Paper Error	The paper is not correctly set in the printer.
Ink Error	The ink casette is experiencing a problem.
Recharge the printer battery	The printer’s battery pack is depleted.
Readjust trimming	You attempted to print the image with a different style than the one used when the trimming settings were set.
Hardware Error	Check whether or not an error other than a paper or ink error has occurred.
File Error	You tried to print an image that is not compatible with *PictBridge*. Some images that have been recorded with another camera or modified using a computer cannot be printed.
Print error	There is an error in the settings. Turn off the printer and turn it on again, then set the print settings correctly.

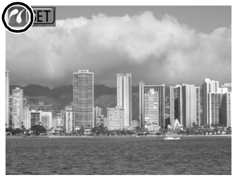
Printing with Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series/ SELPHY DS series) using *PictBridge*

Printing

Easy Print

You can print images by pressing only one button after connecting the camera to the printer.

1



Make sure that displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

2

Display the images you wish to print and press the ⎙ button.

If you wish to change the print settings, see *Print after Changing the Print Settings* (p. 32).

Print after Changing the Print Settings

You can change the print settings before printing.

1

Make sure that displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

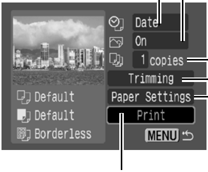
If displays on the LCD monitor, please refer to *Printing with Bubble Jet Printers using Bubble Jet Direct* (p. 68).

2

Display the images you wish to print and press the SET button.

The print order screen appears.

Depending on the printer model, some setting options may not display.



Sets the print effect (p. 35)

Sets the date for printing (p. 34)

Sets the number of copies (p. 36)

Sets the trimming portion (p. 37)

Sets the paper size, type and layout (p. 41)

Starts the printing process

Print Order Screen

3

Select print settings as needed.

4

Select [Print] and press the SET button.

- The image will start to print and, when it is completely finished, the display will revert to the standard playback mode.
- If you press the **MENU** button, the display will revert to the standard playback mode and printing will not take place.

- You cannot print RAW images and movies.
- It may not be possible to play back or print images shot with a different camera.
- You may not be able to print if the memory card holds a large number of images (about 1000).

Cancel Printing

- To cancel printing between images, press the **SET** button. A confirmation dialog will display. Select [OK] and press the **SET** button. The printer will stop printing the current image and eject the paper.

Printing Errors

- An error message appears if an error occurs for some reason during the printing process. When the error is resolved, printing will automatically resume. If printing does not resume, select [Continue] and press the **SET** button. If [Continue] cannot be selected, select [Stop], press the **SET** button and restart the print job. See *List of Messages* (p. 48) for details.
- On printers equipped with an operation panel, an error number or message displays on the panel. Please refer to the printer user guide for the remedies corresponding to the error numbers or messages.

Selecting Print Settings

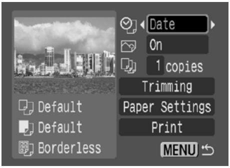
Depending on the camera model, the screens that will be displayed will vary. Moreover, available settings differ depending on the printer model (unavailable settings will not appear in the menu). For details, refer to the user guide that came with your printer.

Default Setting

- The Default option is a fixed setting of the printer.
- The [Date], [Print Effect], paper setting [Paper Size], [Paper Type] and [Page Layout] options are available.
- On printers equipped with an operation panel, you can change the settings for those items set to [Default] using the printer's operation panel.
- The setting contents of the Default option differ depending on the printer model. For details, please refer to the printer user guide.

Setting the Date Printing Option

1



Select [🕓], then select the date printing option.

You can set the date printing as follows:

Date	Prints the date.
Off	The date is not printed.
Default	Prints using the default setting.

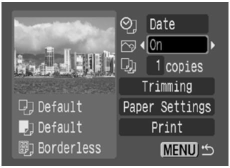
If you select an image which has had the shooting date embedded in it using a camera with the Postcard Date Imprint mode, [◷] will be set to [Off]. If you select [Date], dates will appear twice on the printed image.

Setting the Print Effect

This function uses the camera's shooting information to optimize the image data, yielding high quality prints. You can select the following print effects.

On	Uses the camera's shooting information to deliver optimum prints.
Off	Prints without any effects.
Vivid	Prints more vibrant colors, such as the green of trees or the blue of the sea or sky, than the [On] option.
NR	Prints with a noise reduction effect.
Vivid+NR	Prints using both the [Vivid] and [NR] options.
Default	Print settings differ according to your printer model.

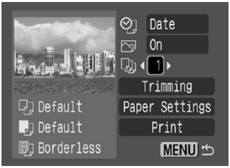
1



Select [🖼] and choose a print effect option.

Setting the Number of Copies

1


Date
On
1
Default
Default
Borderless
Trimming
Paper Settings
Print
MENU

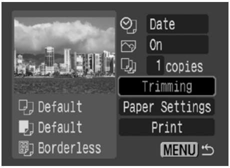
Select [⧉] and set the number of prints.

1 to 99 copies can be set.

Setting the Printing Area (Trimming)

You can specify a portion of the image for printing.
Please set [Paper Settings] (p. 41) before setting the trimming settings. If [Paper Settings] is changed after having made the trimming settings, you must select the settings again.

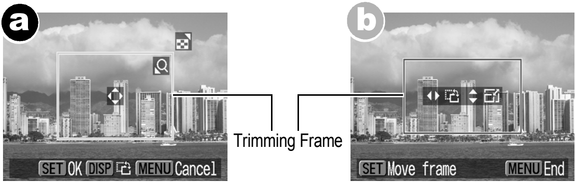
1


Date
On
1 copies
Trimming
Default
Paper Settings
Default
Print
Borderless
MENU

Select [Trimming] and press the SET button.

The trimming frame will appear at the center of the image. If a trimming setting has already been selected for the image, the frame will appear around the previously selected portion.

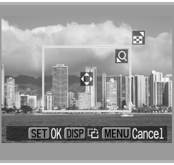
The trimming setting screen differs depending on the camera model. Check which of the following screens appear before selecting settings.


a
b
Trimming Frame
SET OK DISP MENU Cancel
SET Move frame MENU End

➡Steps 2a and 3a

➡Steps 2b and 3b

* Proceed to procedure ⓐ or ⓑ depending on the display screen which appears.



In the case of display screen ⓐ

2a

Trim the image.

Changing the Size of the Trimming Frame

- Press the zoom lever or the zoom button to adjust the size of the trimming frame.
- The trimming frame can be changed to a minimum selection of approximately half the displayed image (in width and height) or a maximum selection that is virtually the same size as the image.
- Expanding the trimming frame beyond its maximum size cancels the trimming setting.
- When printing an image that has been magnified using the trimming option, the image quality may become coarser and grainier depending on the level of magnification.

Moving the Trimming Frame

- Move the trimming frame using the omni selector or the up, down, right and left buttons.

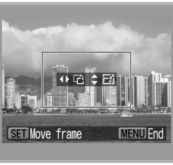
Rotating the Trimming Frame

- You can rotate the trimming frame by pressing the **DISP.** (or **DISPLAY**) button.

3a

Press the SET button to close the setting menu.

Pressing the **MENU** button cancels the settings.



In the case of display screen ⓑ

2b

Trim the image.

Changing the Size of the Trimming Frame

- Press the up and down buttons to adjust the size of the trimming frame.
- The trimming frame can be changed to a minimum selection of approximately half the displayed image (in width and height) or a maximum selection that is virtually the same size as the image.
- Expanding the trimming frame beyond its maximum size cancels the trimming setting.
- When printing an image that has been magnified using the trimming option, the image quality may become coarser and grainier depending on the level of magnification.

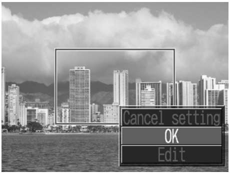
Rotating the Trimming Frame

- You can rotate the trimming frame using the left and right buttons.

Moving the Trimming Frame

- Press the **SET** button and use the up, down, right and left buttons to move the trimming frame. Pressing the **SET** button again allows you to change the size of the frame and to rotate it.

3b



Press the MENU button, select [OK] and press the SET button.

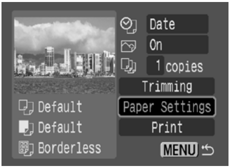
Selecting [Cancel setting] cancels the selected trimming setting. If [Edit] is selected, the display returns to the previous screen.

- The trimming setting only applies to one image.
- The trimming setting is canceled with the following operations.
    - When you set the trimming settings for another image.
    - When you close the Print mode (when you turn the camera power off, change the camera mode, or detach the connection cable).
- The shooting date or part of the date which has been embedded in images using a camera with the Postcard Date Imprint mode may not be printed properly depending on the trimming setting.

- The paper size and page layout settings determine the shape of the trimming frame.
- Please use the LCD monitor to set the trimming settings. The trimming frame may not display correctly on a TV screen.

Selecting the Paper Settings

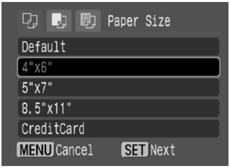
1


Date
On
1 copies
Trimming
Paper Settings
Print
Default
Default
Borderless
MENU

Select [Paper Settings] and press the SET button.

The paper size setting screen appears.

2


Paper Size
Default
4"X6"
5"X7"
8.5"x11"
CreditCard
MENU Cancel
SET Next

Select a paper size and press the SET button.

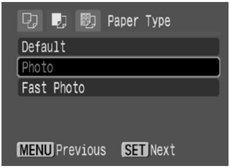
The following paper sizes* are available: 4" × 6", 5" × 7" or 13 × 18 cm, 8.5" × 11" or A4, CreditCard, A3, 13" × 19" or A3+ and Default.

- Some sizes are not available with certain cameras and printer models.

The paper type setting screen appears.

* *Paper sizes vary according to region.*

3


Paper Type
Default
Photo
Fast Photo
MENU Previous
SET Next

Select a paper type and press the SET button.

The following paper types can be selected.

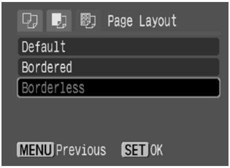
Photo	Prints on Photo Paper Plus Glossy paper*.
Fast Photo	Prints on Photo Paper Pro paper*.
Plain	Prints on plain paper.
Default	Print settings differ according to your printer model.

* *Canon brand paper*

- Other kind of paper may be used. For the usable paper, please also refer to the printer user guide.
- The option you can select will depend on the printer model and paper size.

The Page Layout screen appears.

4


Page Layout
Default
Bordered
Borderless
MENU Previous
SET OK

Select a layout.

The following layout can be selected.

Bordered	Prints with a border.
Borderless	Prints right to the edges of the paper.
N-up*	Prints 2, 4, 9 or 16 images on a single sheet of paper (p. 43).
Default	Print settings differ according to your printer model.

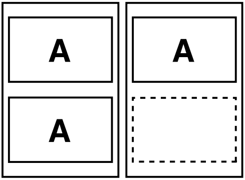
* *Appears only if you select [4" × 6"] in [Paper Size].*

Printing Multiple Images on a Sheet of Paper

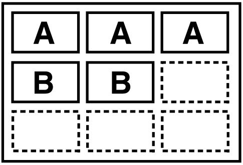
- Selecting [4" x 6"] in the paper size setting (p. 41) will allow you to specify the following layout settings.

2	2 images (height 2 x width 1) of the same dimensions are arranged on a single sheet of paper.
4	4 images (height 2 x width 2) of the same dimensions are arranged on a single sheet of paper.
9	9 images (height 3 x width 3) of the same dimensions are arranged on a single sheet of paper.
16	16 images (height 4 x width 4) of the same dimensions are arranged on a single sheet of paper.

[Printing example 1] Printing 3 copies of image A in 2-up

Number of copies (p. 36)	Image A: [3] copies	
Layout	2	

DPOF print setting (p. 45) allows you to separately print different images by specifying the number of frames to be printed per image.
[Printing example 2] Printing 3 copies of image A and 2 copies of image B in 9-up

DPOF print settings* (p. 45)	Image A: [3] copies Image B: [2] copies	
Layout	9	

* Please refer to the *Camera User Guide* for instructions on DPOF print setting method.

5 Select a layout and press the SET button. This ends the paper settings operations.

The display returns to the print order screen.

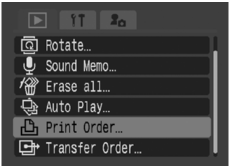
- Images will print with borders, even if [Borderless] was selected with the camera in the following cases:
  - *When [Plain] is selected in the camera's [Paper Type] (cannot be selected depending on the connected printer model)*
  - *With printers equipped with an operation panel, when [Plain] is selected with the printer and [Default] is selected in the camera's [Paper Type].*

Printing with DPOF Print Settings

For instructions on how to set DPOF print settings, please refer to the *DPOF print settings* section of the *Camera User Guide*.

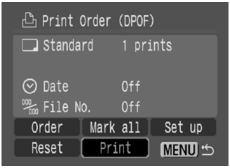
In this section, we will explain how to print several images already specified with DPOF print settings.

1


Rotate...
Sound Memo...
Erase all...
Auto Play...
Print Order...
Transfer Order...

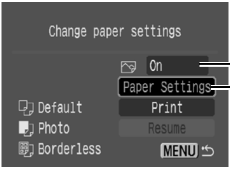
In the [▶ (Play)] menu, select [Print Order] and press the SET button.

2


Print Order (DPOF)
Standard 1 prints
Date Off
File No. Off
Order
Mark all
Set up
Reset
Print
MENU

Select [Print] and press the SET button.

3


Change paper settings
On
Paper Settings
Default
Photo
Borderless
Print
Resume
MENU

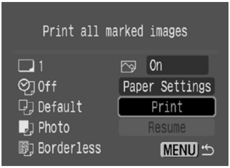
Set the print effect and paper settings as required.

Sets the Print Effect (p. 35)

Selects the Paper Settings* (p. 41)

* *[Page Layout] cannot be set in the [Paper Settings] when [Index] is selected in the [Set up] option in Step 2.*

4



Print all marked images

1

Off

Default

Photo

Borderless

On

Paper Settings

Print

Resume

Select [Print] and press the SET button.

- The image will start to print and, when it is completely finished, the display will revert to the standard playback mode.
- If the **MENU** button is pressed, the display will revert to the print order screen in Step 2 and printing will not take place.

- To print the date, set the [Date] setting in [Set up] on the screen in Step 2 to [On]. You cannot set the date in Step 3.
- When the print type is set to [Index], both the [Date] and [File No.] cannot be printed depending on the printer.
- When the print type is set to [Standard], the [File No.] cannot be printed.

Cancel Printing

- To cancel printing between images printed, press the **SET** button. A confirmation dialog appears. Select [OK] and press the **SET** button. The printer will stop printing the current image and eject the paper.

Restarting Printing

- Select [Resume] and press the **SET** button. The remaining images can be printed.
- Printing cannot be restarted under the following circumstances.
  - If the print settings have been changed before restarting.
  - If the image for which the print settings were set has been deleted before restarting.
  - If there was very little free space on the memory card when the printing was canceled.

  If these circumstances apply, you can select [Print] and reprint starting from the first image.
- If printing is canceled because the camera battery is depleted, replace with a fully charged battery pack or new batteries, then turn the camera power on again.
  If you intend to use an extended period of time, you are recommended to power the camera with a compact power adapter (sold separately or supplied with the camera).

Printing Errors

- An error message appears if an error occurs for some reason during the printing process. When the error is resolved, printing will automatically resume. If printing does not resume, select [Continue] and press the **SET** button. If [Continue] cannot be selected, select [Stop], press the **SET** button and restart the print job. See *List of Messages* (p. 48) for details.
- On printers equipped with an operation panel, an error number or message displays on the panel. Please refer to the printer user guide for the remedies corresponding to the error numbers or messages.

List of Messages

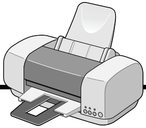
The following messages may appear on the camera LCD monitor if an error occurs during a camera and printer connection. (Depending on the printer, some messages may not appear.)

- Please refer to the printer's user guide for the appropriate remedies.
  ▨ : Printing restarts if you select [Continue] and press the **SET** button. For the remedies to other messages that might appear, refer to your printer's user guide.

No Paper	There is no paper set in the printer. If you are using a printer equipped with a photo paper cassette, specify the paper feed location using the Paper Feed switch.
Paper Jam	The paper jammed during printing. Select [Stop] to cancel printing. After removing the paper, set some paper again and press the **RESUME**/**CANCEL** button on the printer.
Paper Error	The paper is not correctly set in the printer. Also open the paper output tray if it is closed.
No Ink	The ink tank has run out of ink or there is no ink tank in the printer.
▨ **Low ink level**	The ink tank needs to be replaced soon. Prepare a new ink tank. If you select [Continue] in the error screen, you can restart printing.
▨ **Waste tank full**	You can restart printing if you select [Continue] in the error screen. Please request replacement of the waste tank (waste ink absorber) from the shop where you purchased the printer or your nearest Canon Customer Support center listed in the Contact List provided with the printer or in the user guide.
Ink Error	Check the level of the printer's ink and the condition of the waste tank (waste ink absorber).

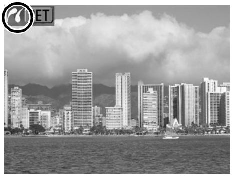
Printer error	Disconnect the cable from the printer and turn off the printer power. Then reconnect the cable and turn on the printer. If the error persists, please consult the dealer where you purchased your printer or your nearest Canon Customer Support center (listed in the Contact List provided with the printer).
Printer in use	The printer is in use now. The printer automatically starts printing the images from the camera after completing the current printing.
Paper lever error	Adjust the paper thickness lever to the proper position.
Printer cover open	Close the printer cover securely.
No print head	No print head is installed in the printer.
Hardware Error	Check whether or not an error other than a paper or ink error has occurred. Or check the printer's battery level when using a battery-operated printer.
File Error	You tried to print an image that is not compatible with *PictBridge*. Some images that have been recorded with another camera or modified using a computer cannot be printed.
Incompatible paper size	Paper of a different size than the specified paper size is set to the printer. Select [Continue] on the error screen to display the paper size setting screen. Correct the paper size using the screen (only the selectable paper sizes appear on the screen).
Print error	Check that the correct paper size is selected. If this error message appears even when the correct paper size is set, turn off the printer, then turn it on again. If the error persists, please consult the dealer where you purchased your printer or your nearest Canon Customer Support center (listed in the Contact List provided with the printer).
Check print settings	Unprintable settings are included. Select [Continue] on the error screen to display the print order screen. Check the print settings (only the printable settings appear on the screen), change the settings if necessary, then print again.

Printing with Non-Canon, *PictBridge* Compliant Printers



Printing

1



Make sure that displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

After this step, follow the procedures in the section *Printing with Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series/SELPHY DS series) using PictBridge* (p. 31) to print your images.

However, the following menu options cannot be set.

- Print Effect (p. 35):[Vivid], [NR], [Vivid+NR]
- Paper Size (p. 41):[13" x 19"/$A3^+$] and [5" x 7"/13 x 18cm]

Please also refer to the user guide that came with your printer.

☑ Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using *Canon Direct Print*

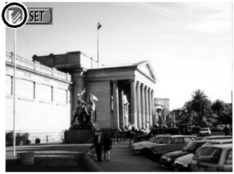
Canon
SELPHY
SELPHY

Printing

Easy Print

You can print images by pressing only one button after connecting the camera to the printer.

1



Make sure that ☑ displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

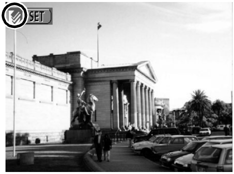
2 **Display the images you wish to print and press the ⎙ button.**

If you wish to change the print settings, see *Print after Changing the Print Settings* below.

Print after Changing the Print Settings

You can change the print settings before printing.

1



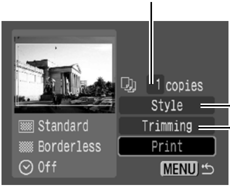
Make sure that ☑ displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

If displays on the LCD monitor, please refer to *Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using PictBridge* (p. 10).

2

Display the images you wish to print and press the SET button.

The print order screen appears.



Print Order Screen

Sets the Number of Copies (p. 53)

Sets the Print Style (p. 53)

Sets the Printing Area (Trimming) (p. 55)

3

Select print settings as required.

4

Select [Print] and press the SET button.

If you press the **MENU** button, the display will revert to the standard playback mode and printing will not take place.

- You cannot print the RAW images.
- It may not be possible to play back or print images shot with a different camera.

Cancel Printing

- You cannot stop printing when printing only one copy of an image. If you are printing more than one copy or more than one image, you can cancel the rest of the printing by pressing the **SET** button. Once the current print is finished, a confirmation dialog appears. Select [OK] and press the **SET** button.

Printing Errors

- An error message appears if an error occurs for some reason during the printing process. Select [Stop] or [Resume] and press the **SET** button. See *List of Messages* (p. 67) for details. The [Resume] option may not appear with some types of errors. In that case, select [Stop].

Selecting Print Settings

Setting the Number of Copies

1 In the print order screen, select [⧉] and set the number of prints.

1 to 99 copies can be set.

Setting the Print Style (Image, Borders and Date)

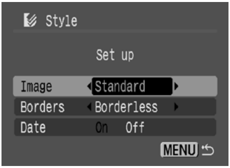
You can select from among the following print styles.

Image	Standard	Prints one image per page.
	Multiple*	Prints eight copies of the same image on one page.
	ID Photo	Prints a specified print size (p. 59).
Borders	Borderless	Prints right to the edges of the paper.
	Bordered	Prints with a border.
Date	On	Adds the date to the print.
	Off	Prints without the date.

* *This option can only be selected when printing on credit card size paper.*

1 In the print order screen, select [Style] and press the SET button.

2



Style

Set up

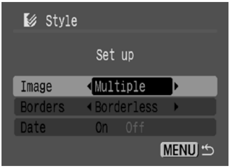
Image Standard

Borders Borderless

Date On Off

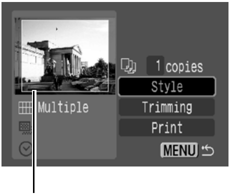
Select [Image], [Borders], or [Date].

3


Style
Set up
Image ◂Multiple ▸
Borders ◂Borderless ▸
Date On Off
MENU

Select settings as needed.

4


1 copies
Style
Trimming
Print
Multiple
MENU

Print Area Frame

Press the MENU button to end the setting selection process.

With borderless or multiple prints, the top, bottom and sides of the image may be cropped slightly. If you have not specified a trimming setting, a frame will appear around the area of the image that will be printed, allowing you to check the portion that will be cropped.

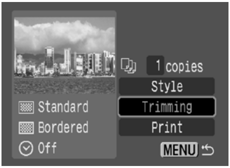
If you select an image which has had the shooting date embedded in it using a camera with the Postcard Date Imprint mode, [Date] in the [Style] menu will be set to [Off]. If you set [Date] to [On], dates will appear twice on the printed image.

- When printing multiple prints, the [Borders] and the [Date] cannot be set. (Images are printed without any date or borders.)
- Practically all of the image area displayed on the LCD monitor is printed on bordered prints.

Setting the Printing Area (Trimming)

You can specify which portion of an image gets printed. Please set the Print Style (Image, Borders and Date) before setting the trimming settings. If the print style is changed after having made the trimming settings, you must select the settings again.

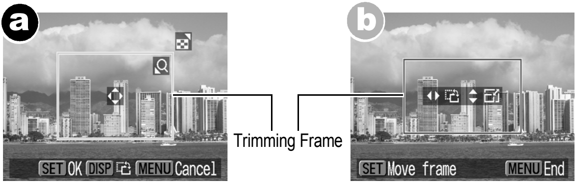
1


1 copies
Style
Trimming
Print
Standard
Bordered
Off
MENU

Select [Trimming] and press the SET button.

The trimming frame will appear at the center of the image. If a trimming setting has already been selected for the image, the frame will appear around the previously selected portion.

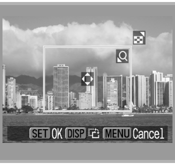
The trimming setting screen differs depending on the camera model. Check which of the following screens appear before selecting settings.


a
SET OK DISP MENU Cancel
Trimming Frame
b
SET Move frame
MENU End

➡Steps 2a and 3a

➡Steps 2b and 3b

* Proceed to procedure ⓐ or ⓑ depending on the display screen which appears.



In the case of display screen ⓐ

2a

Trim the image.

Changing the Size of the Trimming Frame

- Press the zoom lever or the zoom button to adjust the size of the trimming frame.
- The trimming frame can be changed to a minimum selection of approximately half the displayed image (in width and height) or a maximum selection that is virtually the same size as the image.
- Expanding the trimming frame beyond its maximum size cancels the trimming setting.
- When printing an image that has been magnified using the trimming option, the image quality may become coarser and grainier depending on the level of magnification. If this happens, the trimming frame displays in red.

Moving the Trimming Frame

- Move the trimming frame using the omni selector or the up, down, right and left buttons.

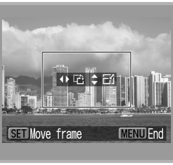
Rotating the Trimming Frame

- You can rotate the trimming frame by pressing the **DISP.** (or **DISPLAY**) button.

3a

Press the SET button to close the setting menu.

Pressing the **MENU** button cancels the settings.



In the case of display screen ⓑ

2b

Trim the image.

Changing the Size of the Trimming Frame

- Press the up and down buttons to adjust the size of the trimming frame.
- The trimming frame can be changed to a minimum selection of approximately half the displayed image (in width and height) or a maximum selection that is virtually the same size as the image.
- Expanding the trimming frame beyond its maximum size cancels the trimming setting.
- When printing an image that has been magnified using the trimming option, the image quality may become coarser and grainier depending on the level of magnification. If this happens, the trimming frame displays in red.

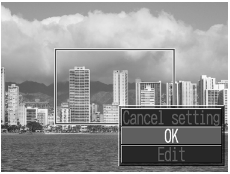
Rotating the Trimming Frame

- You can rotate the trimming frame using the left and right buttons.

Moving the Trimming Frame

- Press the **SET** button and use the up, down, right and left buttons to move the trimming frame. Pressing the **SET** button again allows you to change the size of the frame and to rotate it.

3b



Press the MENU button, select [OK] and press the SET button.

Selecting [Cancel setting] cancels the selected trimming setting. If [Edit] is selected, the display returns to the previous screen.

- The trimming setting only applies to one image.
- The trimming setting is canceled with the following operations.
  - When you set the trimming settings for another image.
  - When you close the Print mode (when you turn the camera power off, change the camera mode, or detach the connection cable).
- The shooting date or part of the date which has been embedded in images using a camera with the Postcard Date Imprint mode may not be printed properly depending on the trimming setting.

- The selected image and border settings determine the shape of the trimming frame.
- Please use the LCD monitor to set the trimming settings. The trimming frame may not display correctly on a TV screen.

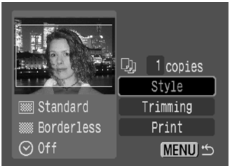
Printing by Specifying the Print Size (ID Photo Print)

You can specify the print size and print portion of an image or a whole image as an ID photo*.

* *Images printed with the ID Photo Print function may not be allowed as a formal certificate photo. Refer to the party (organization) or administration requiring the photo.*

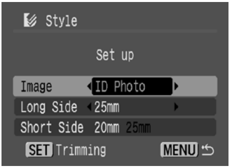
The print size can be specified for only L (Large) resolution images in the camera connected to the printer.

1



In the print order screen, select [Style] and press the SET button.

2


Style

Set up

Image ID Photo

Long Side 25mm

Short Side 20mm 25mm

Select [Image], then select [ID Photo]. Specify the print size by selecting the length of the long side and the short side, then press the SET button.

Specify the size by selecting the length of the long side first, then the short side. See the next table for selectable combinations of the long side length and the short side length.

● Selectable combination

■ : Available print size

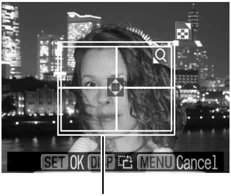
Short Side

Long Side

	20 mm	25 mm	30 mm	35 mm	40 mm	45 mm	50 mm
25 mm	■	■					
30 mm		■	■				
35 mm		■	■	■			
40 mm			■	■	■		
45 mm				■	■	■	
50 mm				■	■	■	■
55 mm					■	■	■
60 mm					■	■	■
70 mm							■

	1.4 inch	1.5 inch	1.8 inch	2.0 inch
1.8 inch	■	■		
2.0 inch			■	■

3



Trimming Frame

Trim the image to specify the print area.

See Step 2 of *Setting the Printing Area (Trimming)* (p. 56 and p. 57) on how to trim the image.

The trimming setting screen differs depending on the camera model. Follow the steps according to the screen that displays on your camera.

4 **Press the SET button to close the setting menu.**

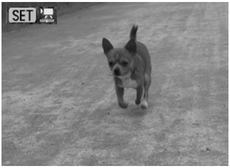
- The print size setting only applies to one image.
- The print size setting is canceled with the following operations:
  - When you set the print size settings for another image.
  - When you close the Print mode (when you turn the camera power off, change the camera mode, or detach the connection cable).

- The shape of the trimming frame varies depending on the specified print size.
- Use the LCD monitor to specify the print size settings. The trimming frame may not display correctly on a TV screen.

Printing Movies (Movie Print)

You can print movie frames selected automatically at fairly regular intervals laid out in index style on a single sheet of paper.

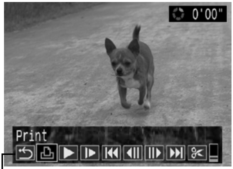
1



Select the movie you want to print, then press the SET button.

The movie control panel appears.

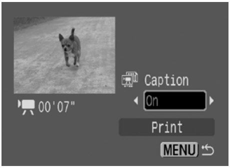
2



Movie Control Panel

Select (Print) and press the SET button.

3



If necessary, select [On] or [Off] in (Caption).

If you set (Caption) to [On], you can print the file number and the elapsed time of the frame at the same time.

4 **Select [Print] and press the SET button.**

It may not be possible to play back or print movies shot with a different camera.

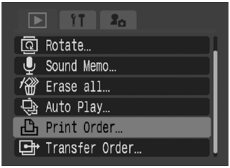
- If you press the ⎙ button instead of the **SET** button in Step 1, movie print begins.
- The number of printed movie frames per sheet of paper is determined by the paper size shown as follows:
  (Depending on the number of seconds in the movie, there are cases when the number of frames indicated below will not be printed.)
  - Credit card size: 20 frames
  - L size: 42 frames
  - Postcard size: 63 frames
  - Wide size: 63 frames

Printing with DPOF Print Settings

For instructions on how to set DPOF print settings, please refer to the *DPOF print settings* section of the *Camera User Guide*.

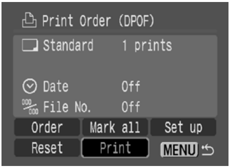
In this section, we will explain how to print several images already specified with DPOF print settings.

1


Rotate...
Sound Memo...
Erase all...
Auto Play...
Print Order...
Transfer Order...

In the [▶ (Play)] menu, select [Print Order] and press the SET button.

2


Print Order (DPOF)

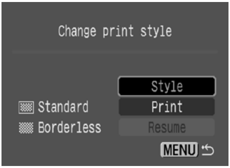
Standard 1 prints

Date Off

File No. Off
Order
Mark all
Set up
Reset
Print
MENU

Select [Print] and press the SET button.

3

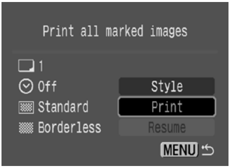

Change print style

Standard
Borderless
Style
Print
Resume
MENU

Set the print style settings as required.

- See *Setting the Print Style (Image, Borders and Date)* (p. 53).
- A print style cannot be set if [Set up] on the screen in Step 2 is set to [Index].

4



Select [Print] and press the SET button.

- The image will start to print and, when it is completely finished, the display will revert to the standard playback mode.
- If the **MENU** button is pressed, the display will revert to the print order screen in Step 2 and printing will not take place.

- To print the date, set the [Date] setting in [Set up] on the screen in Step 2 to [On]. You cannot set the date to print with the [Style] menu in Step 3.
- When the print type is set to [Index], the [Date] cannot be printed.
- When the print type is set to [Standard], the [File No.] cannot be printed.
- The ID photo print function cannot be used.
- You cannot print movies.

- The maximum number of images printed on one page in the Index print type depends on the selected paper size.
  - Credit card size: 20 images
  - L size: 42 images
  - Postcard size: 63 images
  - Wide size: 63 images

Cancel Printing

- To cancel printing between images printed, press the **SET** button.
  Once the current print is completed, a confirmation dialog appears. Select [OK] and press the **SET** button.

Restarting Printing

- Select [Resume] and press the **SET** button. The remaining images can be printed.
- Printing cannot be restarted under the following circumstances.
  - If the print settings have been changed before restarting.
  - If the image for which the print settings were set has been deleted before restarting.
  - If there was very little free space on the memory card when the printing was canceled.

  If these circumstances apply, you can select [Print] and reprint starting from the first image.
- If printing is canceled because the camera battery is depleted, replace with a fully charged battery pack or new batteries, then turn the camera power on again.

  If you intend to use an extended period of time, you are recommended to power the camera with a compact power adapter (sold separately or supplied with the camera).

Printing Errors

- An error message appears if an error occurs for some reason during the printing process. Select [Stop] or [Resume] and press the **SET** button.

  * The [Resume] option may not appear with some types of errors. In that case, select [Stop].

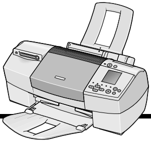
List of Messages

The following messages may appear on the camera's LCD monitor when an error occurs during a camera and printer connection. (Depending on the printer model, some messages may not display.)

- Please refer to the printer's user guide for solutions.

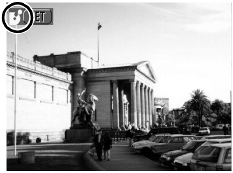
No Paper	Paper cassette is incorrectly inserted or out of paper. Or the paper feed is not operating correctly.
No Ink	The ink cassette has not been inserted or has run out of ink.
Incompatible paper size	Wrong paper size is loaded in the printer.
Incompatible ink size	Wrong ink cassette size is loaded in the printer.
Ink Cassette Error	The ink cassette is experiencing a problem.
Paper and ink do not match	The paper and ink are from different sets.
Paper Jam	The paper jammed during printing.
Paper has been changed	Paper was changed after the print style was displayed.
Recharge the printer battery	The printer's battery pack is depleted.
Communication Error	The printer is experiencing a data transmission error.
Readjust trimming	You attempted to print the image with a different style than the one used when the trimming settings were set.
Cannot Print!	You attempted to print an image that was photographed with another camera, one recorded in a different data type, or one that has been edited on a computer.
Could not print xx images	You attempted to use the DPOF print settings to print xx images that were photographed with another camera, that have been recorded in a different data type, or that have been edited on a computer.

Printing with Bubble Jet Printers using *Bubble Jet Direct*



Printing

1



Make sure that displays in the upper left corner of the LCD monitor.

If displays, refer to *Printing with Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series/ SELPHY DS series) using PictBridge* (p. 31).

After this step, follow the procedures in the section *Printing with SELPHY CP Series Printers using Canon Direct Print* (p. 51) to print your images.

However, please note that some menus and precautions differ, as listed below.

See pages 52 and 65.

- You cannot print movies or RAW images.

Cancel Printing

- To cancel printing between images printed, press the **SET** button. A confirmation dialog appears. Select [OK] and press the **SET** button.
  The printer will stop printing the current image and eject the paper.

Printing Errors

- An error message appears if an error occurs for some reason during the printing process. When the error is resolved, printing will automatically resume. If printing does not resume, select [Continue] and press the **SET** button. If [Continue] cannot be selected, select [Stop], press the **SET** button and restart the print job.
- With printers equipped with an operation panel, the error number displays on the panel. Please refer to the printer user guide for the remedies corresponding to the error numbers.

See page 53.

Setting the Print Style

You can select from among the following print styles.

Paper		Select the paper size from the following: [Card #1], [Card #2], [Card #3], [LTR] or [A4]. For the usable paper type, please refer to the printer user guide.
Borders	Borderless	Prints right to the edges of the paper.
	Bordered	Prints with a border.
Date	On	Adds the date to the print.
	Off	Prints without the date.

- The ID photo print function cannot be used.
- If you select an image which has had the shooting date embedded in it using a camera with the Postcard Date Imprint mode, [Date] in the [Style] menu will be set to [Off]. If you set [Date] to [On], dates will appear twice on the printed image.

See page 65.

- To print the date, set the [Date] setting in [Set up] on the screen in Step 2 to [On]. You cannot set the date to print with the [Style] menu in Step 3.
- When the print type is set to [Index], the [Date] and [File No.] cannot be printed at the same time.
- When the print type is set to [Standard], the [File No.] cannot be printed.
- The ID photo print function cannot be used.

Settings that Can Be Set with the Camera

SELPHY CP Series Printers using *PictBridge*

(When appears on the camera’s LCD monitor during a connection)

Print Options Selectable with the Camera			
Date/File No.	Date		
	File No.		
	Both		
	Off		
	Default		
Print Effect	Off		
	On		
	Default		
Number of Prints	1 to 99		
Trimming			
Paper Settings	Paper Size	CreditCard	
		9 × 13 cm	
		10 × 14.8 cm	
		4" × 8" or 10 × 20 cm	
		Default	
	Page Layout	Bordered	
		Borderless	
		N-up	2/4/(8*)
		ID Photo	
		Fixed Size	
		Default	
Movies (Movie Print)			

* *This option can only be selected when [CreditCard] size paper is set.*

Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series/ SELPHY DS series) using *PictBridge*

(When appears on the camera’s LCD monitor during a connection)
Some settings are not available with certain cameras and printers.

Print Options Selectable with the Camera	
Date	Date
	Off
	Default
Print Effect	Off
	On
	Vivid
	NR
	Vivid+NR
	Default
Number of Prints	1 to 99
Trimming	

Paper Settings	Paper Size*[1]	4" × 6"	
		5" × 7" or 13 × 18 cm	
		8.5" × 11" or A4	
		CreditCard	
		A3	
		13" × 19" or A3+	
		Default	
	Paper Type	Photo	
		Fast Photo	
		Plain	
		Default	
	Page Layout	Bordered	
		Borderless	
		N-up*[2]	2/4/9/16
		Default	

*[1] *Paper sizes vary according to region.*

*[2] *This option can be specified by selecting [4" x 6"] in [Paper Size].*

☑ SELPHY CP Series Printers using *Canon Direct Print*

⊡ Bubble Jet Printers using *Bubble Jet Direct*

(When ☑ or ⊡ appears on the camera’s LCD monitor during a connection)

Print Options Selectable with the Camera			SELPHY CP series Printers using *Canon Direct Print*	Bubble Jet Printers using *Bubble Jet Direct*
Number of Prints	1 to 99		○	○
Style	Image	1 image	○	–
		Multiple	○	–
		ID Photo	○	–
	Paper	Card #1, Card #2, Card #3, Letter (LTR) or A4	–*	○
	Borders	Bordered	○	○
		Borderless	○	○
	Date		○	○
Trimming			○	○
Movies (Movie Print)			○	–

* *Paper size will be set automatically according to the paper cassette set to the printer.*

Canon

CEL-SE0MA219

© 2005 CANON INC.

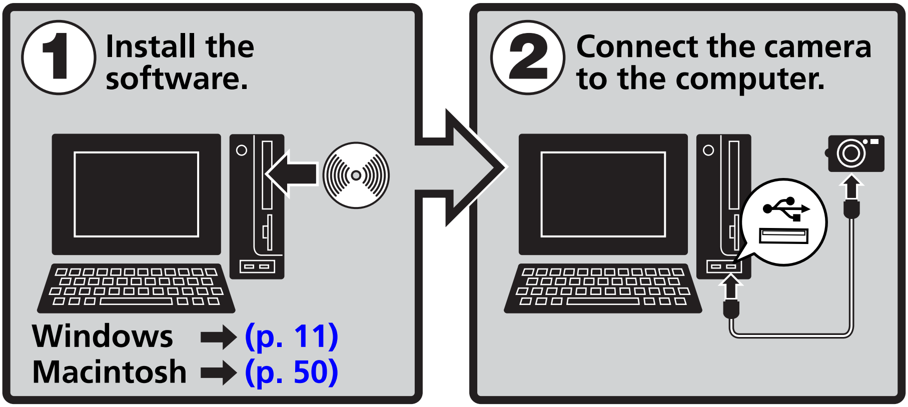
ENGLISH

Canon

Software Starter Guide

(For the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk Version 25)

You must install the software bundled on the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk before connecting the camera to the computer.



① Install the software.

Windows ➡ (p. 11)
Macintosh ➡ (p. 50)

② Connect the camera to the computer.

- This guide explains how to install the software programs and briefly introduces their functions and operating procedures.
- Please read the software license agreement that displays during installation before using the software on the supplied CD-ROM. You must accept the terms and conditions of the software license agreement to use the software.

DPOF™

Windows/Macintosh
Windows
Macintosh

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

The precautions noted within this guide are intended to instruct you in the safe and correct use of the products and to prevent injuries or damage to yourself, other persons and property. Please read and ensure that you understand them before proceeding to other sections of the guide.

⚠Warnings This symbol indicates topics that could lead to death or serious injury if ignored or handled incorrectly.

⚠Warnings

- Do not play the supplied CD-ROM(s) in any CD player that does not support data CD-ROMs. Playing the CD-ROM(s) in an audio CD player (music player) could damage the speakers. It is also possible to suffer from hearing loss from listening with headphones to the loud sounds of a CD-ROM played on a music CD player.

Disclaimer

- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained in this guide is accurate and complete, no liability can be accepted for any errors or omissions. Canon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described herein at any time without prior notice.
- No part of this guide may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without the prior written permission of Canon.
- Canon makes no warranties for damages resulting from corrupted or lost data due to a mistaken operation or malfunction of the camera, the software, the CompactFlash™ cards (CF cards), personal computers, peripheral devices, or use of non-Canon CF cards.

Trademark Acknowledgments

- ArcSoft, the ArcSoft logo and ArcSoft PhotoStudio are trademarks or registered trademarks of ArcSoft, Inc.
- Adobe is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- CompactFlash is a trademark of SanDisk Corporation.
- Macintosh, Mac OS and QuickTime are trademarks of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft® and Windows® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Other names and products not mentioned above may be registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

Copyright © 2005 Canon Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of contents

Read This First 3

It's so Simple! Make Prints Right at Home Like a Pro 4
Unbounded Possibilities with Entertaining Software 6
System Requirements 8
Programs and Compatible Operating Systems 9
Before You Connect the Camera to the Computer 10

Using the Software on the Windows Platform – Preparations 11

Installing the Software and USB Driver 11

Using the Software on the Windows Platform – The Basics 16

Downloading Images to the Computer 16
Printing Images 21

Using the Software on the Windows Platform – Advanced Techniques 27

The ZoomBrowser EX Windows 27
ZoomBrowser EX Features 33
Replaying Movies 36
Editing Movies 37
Converting RAW Images 38
Operating the Shutter Remotely 41
Merging Panoramic Images – PhotoStitch 44
Enjoy Customizing Your Camera with the My Camera Settings ... 45

Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – Preparations 50

Installing the Software 50

Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – The Basics 52

Downloading Images to the Computer 52
Printing Images 56

Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – Advanced Techniques 60

The ImageBrowser Windows 60
ImageBrowser Features 66
Replaying Movies 69
Editing Movies 70
Converting RAW Images 71
Operating the Shutter Remotely 73
Merging Panoramic Images – PhotoStitch 76
Enjoy Customizing Your Camera with the My Camera Settings ... 77

Appendices 82

ArcSoft PhotoStudio 82
Uninstalling the Software 84
Memory Card Folder Structure 87
Method for Downloading to a Computer without Additional Software 88
Troubleshooting 89

Information about Your Camera 98

Non-Supported Programs and Features 98

Index 99

Read This First

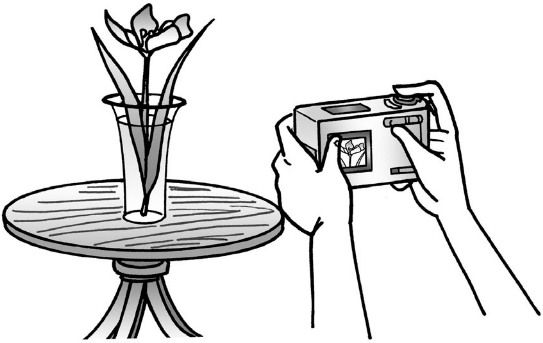
This chapter explains what you can accomplish using the camera with the software contained on the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk.
It also lists the computer system configurations required to use the software.

About this Guide

- The explanations in this guide are based on Windows XP and Mac OS X v10.3. If you are using another version of these operating systems, the actual screen contents and procedures may vary slightly from those shown.
- The following terms are used in this guide.
  Mac OS X is used for Mac OS X (v10.2-v10.3)
  Memory card is used for CF cards, SD cards, MultiMediaCards and PC cards.

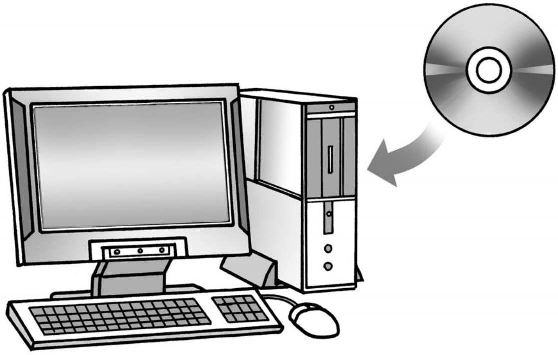
It’s so Simple! Make Prints Right at Home Like a Pro

Shoot the images



See your *Camera User Guide* for shooting instructions.

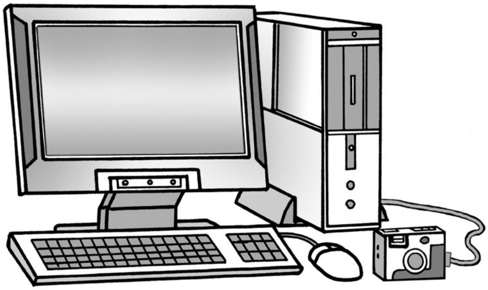
Install the software on the computer



Windows (p. 11)
Macintosh (p. 50)

Just install the software once at the beginning.

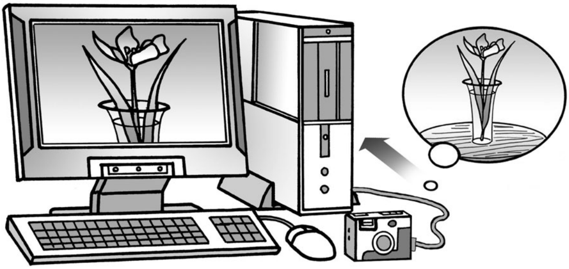
Connect the camera to the computer



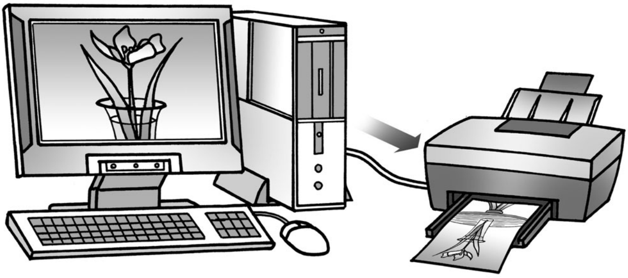
Precautions for Connecting the Camera to the Computer (p. 10)

Download images to the computer

Windows (p. 16)
Macintosh (p. 52)



Print the images



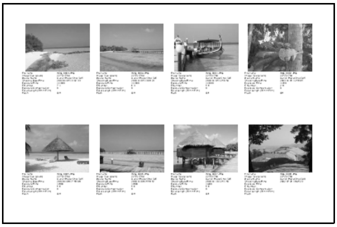
Windows (p. 21)
Macintosh (p. 56)

Unbounded Possibilities with Entertaining Software

Print a Variety of Layouts

Print with the diverse layouts available in ZoomBrowser EX/PhotoRecord (Windows) and ImageBrowser (Macintosh). The examples shown are from ZoomBrowser EX and PhotoRecord (Windows).

With One Photo per Page Print, printing images is also easy.



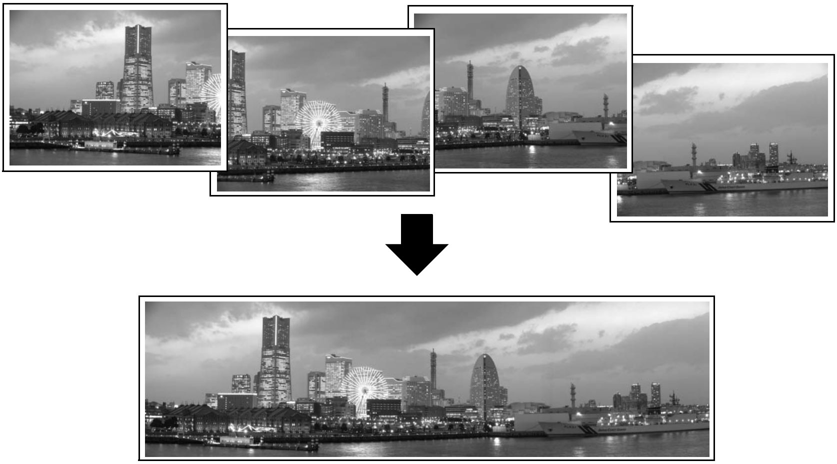
Confirm all your images in one glance with index (contact sheet) printing.

Make your pleasurable memories into photo albums/ collections with Layout Print.

Our Vacation
On the boat.
Beautiful sky, beautiful beach.

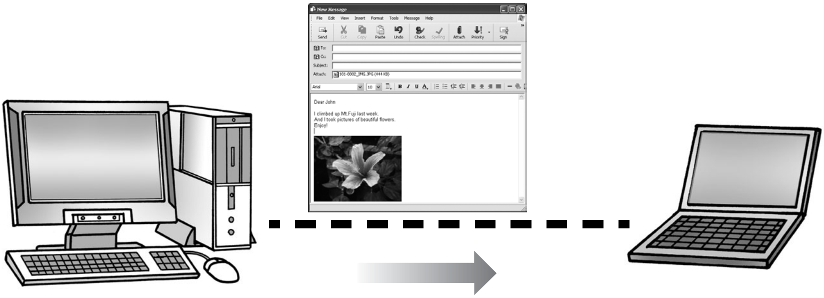
Stitch a Panorama Together

Create a panoramic image from a series of images with PhotoStitch.



Send an Image as an E-mail Attachment

Attach an image to an e-mail message by starting your mail software from within ZoomBrowser EX (Windows) or ImageBrowser (Macintosh).


New Message
File
Edit
View
Insert
Format
Tools
Message
Help
Send
Cut
Copy
Paste
Undo
Check
Spelling
Attach
Priority
Sign
To:
Cc:
Subject:
Attach:
Arial
10

Attach: 101-0002_IMG.JPG (444 KB)

Dear John

I climbed up Mt.Fuji last week.
And I took pictures of beautiful flowers.
Enjoy!

Edit a Movie

You can edit movies, linking movies and stills that have been downloaded to the computer, adding text, such as titles, adding background music or applying various special effects.

Extract Stills from Movies

You can extract a still from the displayed movie and save it as a new image file. You can also specify a range of frames and extract multiple stills.

System Requirements

Please install the software on a computer meeting the following minimum requirements.

Windows

OS	Windows 98 Second Edition (SE) Windows Me Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 Windows XP (including Service Pack 1 and Service Pack 2)
Computer Model	The above OS should be pre-installed on computers with built-in USB ports.
CPU	Pentium 500 MHz or higher processor
RAM	Windows 98 SE/Windows Me: 128 MB or more Windows 2000/Windows XP: 256 MB or more
Interface	USB
Free Hard Disk Space	• Canon Utilities - ZoomBrowser EX: 250 MB or more (Including the PhotoRecord printing program) - PhotoStitch: 40 MB or more • Canon Camera TWAIN Driver: 25 MB or more • Canon Camera WIA Driver: 25 MB or more • ArcSoft PhotoStudio: 50 MB or more
Display	1,024 x 768 pixels/High Color (16 bit) or better

Macintosh

OS	Mac OS X (v10.2-v10.3)
Computer Model	The above OS should be pre-installed on computers with built-in USB ports.
CPU	PowerPC G3/G4/G5
RAM	256 MB or more
Interface	USB
Free Hard Disk Space	• Canon Utilities - ImageBrowser: 200 MB or more - PhotoStitch: 40 MB or more • ArcSoft PhotoStudio: 50 MB or more
Display	1,024 x 768 pixels/32,000 Colors or better

- A CD-ROM drive is required to install the software.
- Even when system requirements are met, not all computer functions can be guaranteed.
- A sound card is required to play movie file audio tracks under Windows.
- With Windows, QuickTime 6.5 is required to save images merged with PhotoStitch as the QuickTime VR type. It is also required to play and edit movies on the Windows 98 SE, Windows Me and Windows 2000 platforms and to edit movies with Windows XP. QuickTime is included on the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk.
- Macintosh software cannot be used on disks formatted in the UFS (Unix File System) format.

Programs and Compatible Operating Systems

The CD-ROM labeled "Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk" is provided with all models.
It contains the following programs.

Windows Programs

Compatible OS / Program	Windows 98	Windows Me	Windows 2000	Windows XP	Major Functions
ZoomBrowser EX	●*3	●	●	●	Downloading, displaying, organizing and editing images
TWAIN Driver	●*3	–	●	–*4	Driver for Canon brand cameras (for Windows 98, Windows 2000)
WIA Driver	–	●	–	–*4	Driver (Windows Me)
PhotoRecord*1	●*3	●	●	●	Layout and printing
PhotoStitch*1	●*3	●	●	●	Merging images to make panoramas
ArcSoft PhotoStudio*1 *2	●	●	●	●	Advanced image editing

*1 Can be started from within ZoomBrowser EX.
*2 Image editing program manufactured by ArcSoft, Inc.
*3 Compatible with Windows 98 SE only.
*4 Driver not required because Windows XP supports PTP.

Macintosh Programs

Compatible OS / Program	Mac OS X	Major Functions
ImageBrowser	●	Downloading, displaying, organizing and editing images
PhotoStitch*1	●	Merging images to make panoramas
ArcSoft PhotoStudio*1 *2	●	Advanced image editing

*1 Can be started from within ImageBrowser.
*2 Image editing program manufactured by ArcSoft, Inc.

See *ArcSoft PhotoStudio* (p. 82) for information about this program.

Before You Connect the Camera to the Computer

Ensure that you have installed the software from the supplied Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk before you connect the camera to the computer.

Precautions for Connecting the Camera to the Computer

- Use the interface cable to attach the camera directly to a USB port on the computer, not through a USB hub. The connection may not operate correctly through a USB hub.
- The connection may not operate correctly if you are using other USB devices, excluding USB mice or keyboards, at the same time as the camera. If this occurs, disconnect the other devices from the computer and try reconnecting the camera.
- Do not connect two or more cameras at the same time to the same computer via the USB interface. The connections may not operate correctly.
- Never allow the computer to go into standby (sleep) mode while a camera is connected via the USB interface. If it does happen, never disconnect the interface cable. Try to awaken the computer with the camera in the connected state. Some computers will not awaken properly if you disconnect the camera while they are in standby (sleep) mode. Please refer to your computer manual for instructions regarding the standby (sleep) mode.

- You are recommended to power the camera from a household power source (AC adapter) when connecting to a computer (if available for your camera model). Ensure that you use fully charged batteries if you will not be using a household power source.
- See the *Camera User Guide* for procedures connecting the camera to the computer.

Using the Software on the Windows Platform – Preparations

This chapter explains the basic procedures for installing the software and connecting the camera to a computer. Read this material before you connect the camera to the computer.

Installing the Software and USB Driver

Start by installing the software from the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk.

- You must install the software before you connect the camera to the computer.
- Users of Windows XP and Windows 2000 must first log in as an Administrator (computer system administrator) to install programs.

See *ArcSoft PhotoStudio* (p. 82) for details on how to install ArcSoft PhotoStudio.

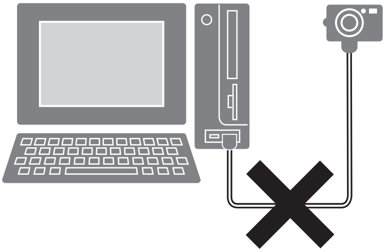
Items to Prepare

- Your camera and computer
- Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk
- Interface cable supplied with the camera

Installation Procedures

1 **Confirm that the camera is NOT connected to the computer.**

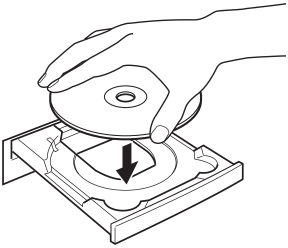
If it is, disconnect the cable. The software cannot be properly installed if the camera is connected to the computer at the start.



2 **Close any programs that are running.**

3 **Place the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk in the computer's CD-ROM drive.**

If the installer panel does not appear automatically, use the following procedures.



How to Display the Installer Panel

Use the following procedures to display the installer panel if it does not appear automatically.

Windows XP

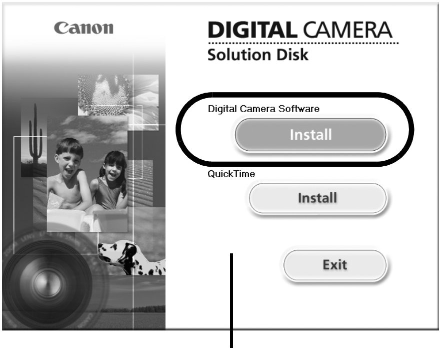
1. Select [My Computer] from the [Start] menu.
2. Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select [Open].
3. Double-click the [SETUP.EXE] icon.

Windows 2000, Windows Me, Windows 98 SE

1. Double-click the [My Computer] icon on the desktop.
2. Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select [Open].
3. Double-click the [SETUP.EXE] icon.

Some computers may not display the [.EXE] file name extension as shown above.

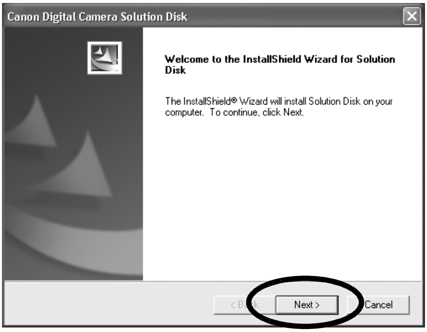
4 **Click the Digital Camera Software [Install] button.**



Installer Panel

Follow any instructions to restart your computer, if they appear. If the following window appears, continue with the installation.

5 Click [Next].

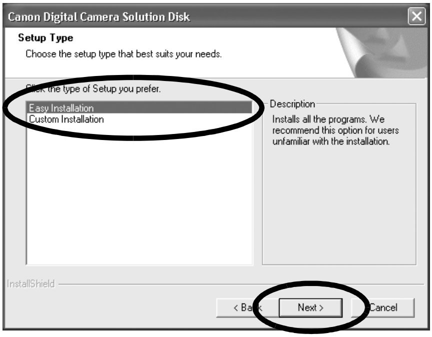

Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for Solution Disk

The InstallShield® Wizard will install Solution Disk on your computer. To continue, click Next.

6 Select [Easy Installation] as the setup type and click [Next].

Select [Custom Installation] to select programs individually for installation.


Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Setup Type

Choose the setup type that best suits your needs.

Click the type of Setup you prefer.

Easy Installation
Custom Installation

Description

Installs all the programs. We recommend this option for users unfamiliar with the installation.

When [Custom Installation] is Selected

The USB driver (the software for connecting) is required when the camera is connected to the computer with an interface cable. Ensure that you select a USB driver from below (the appropriate one for your operating system).

- Windows 2000/Windows 98 SE: Canon Camera TWAIN Driver
- Windows Me: Canon Camera WIA Driver

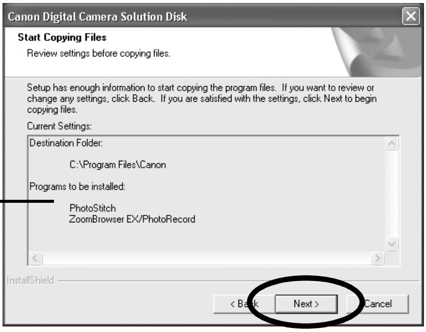
With Windows XP, the USB driver supplied with the Windows operating system is used so there is no need to install a USB driver.

7 Click [Yes] if you agree to all of the terms of the software license agreement.

8 Review the installation settings and click [Next].

Follow the onscreen instructions to proceed.

The items displayed here differ according to the software installed.


Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk
InstallShield
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Start Copying Files

Review settings before copying files.

Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings, click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files.

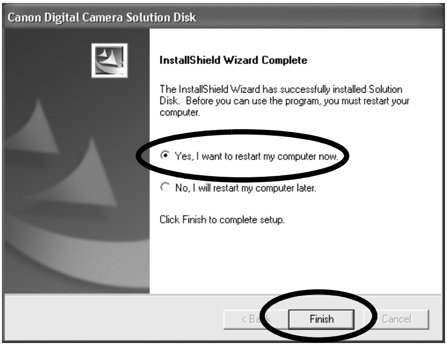
Current Settings:

Destination Folder:
C:\Program Files\Canon

Programs to be installed:
PhotoStitch
ZoomBrowser EX/PhotoRecord

9 **When the installation is over, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.] and click [Finish].**

At this stage, do NOT remove the Solution Disk from the CD-ROM drive yet.



Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk

InstallShield Wizard Complete

The InstallShield Wizard has successfully installed Solution Disk. Before you can use the program, you must restart your computer.

● Yes, I want to restart my computer now.

○ No, I will restart my computer later.

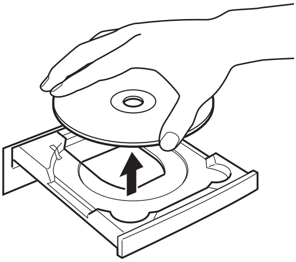
Click Finish to complete setup.

Users of Windows XP and Windows 2000 must log in as an Administrator (computer system administrator) after restarting to carry out the subsequent procedures.

10 **Remove the disk from the CD-ROM drive when your normal desktop screen appears after restarting.**

This concludes the software installation.

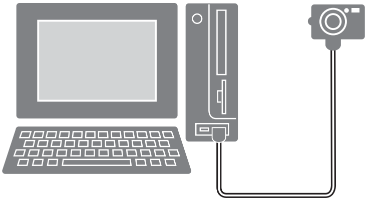
Continue by connecting the camera to the computer so that the USB driver can be utilized.



If you installed a USB driver, so far the required files have only been copied to your computer. You must now connect the camera to the computer with the interface cable to complete the installation and prepare the driver for use.

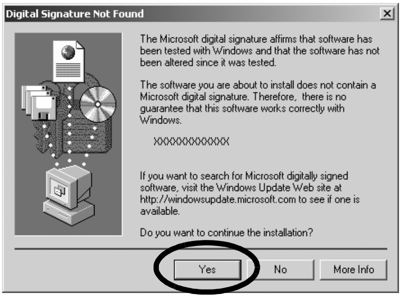
See *Uninstalling the Software* (p. 84) to delete the installed programs.

11 **Attach the camera to the computer with the interface cable and set the camera to the correct mode for connecting.**



Procedures for attaching the camera to the computer and placing the camera in the correct mode for connecting vary between camera models. See the *Camera User Guide*.

If the Digital Signature Not Found window appears, click [Yes].



Digital Signature Not Found

The Microsoft digital signature affirms that software has been tested with Windows and that the software has not been altered since it was tested.

The software you are about to install does not contain a Microsoft digital signature. Therefore, there is no guarantee that this software works correctly with Windows.

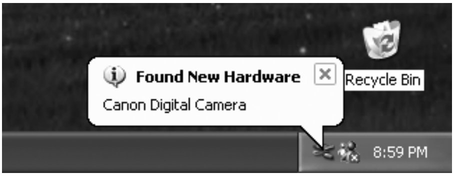
XXXXXXXXXXXX

If you want to search for Microsoft digitally signed software, visit the Windows Update Web site at http://windowsupdate.microsoft.com to see if one is available.

Do you want to continue the installation?

The USB driver will automatically finish installing onto the computer when you attach the camera and open a connection.
Dialogs similar to the following will appear during this process (first time the camera is connected to a computer only).

Windows XP
The dialog on the right will appear after a few moments.



Found New Hardware

Canon Digital Camera

Windows 2000/Windows Me/Windows 98 SE
Restart the computer according to the instructions if you are prompted to do so by a message.

A dialog allowing you to set the default settings will display after installation. See *Using the Software on the Windows Platform – The Basics* (p. 16) for the subsequent procedures.

- **See *USB driver installation not proceeding well* in the *Troubleshooting* section (p. 90) if you are having problems installing the USB driver.**
- **See *Uninstalling the USB Driver* (p. 85) to delete the USB driver installed with these procedures.**
- **See *If You Were Using ZoomBrowser EX Version 2 or 3* (p. 97) if you were previously using either version.**

This concludes the software and USB driver installation and the procedures for connecting the camera to the computer.
You may now download camera images to the computer (p. 16).

Using the Software on the Windows Platform – The Basics

This chapter explains the procedures for using ZoomBrowser EX to download the camera's images to the computer and print them.
Read this chapter after completing the preparations in the *Using the Software on the Windows Platform – Preparations* section.

Downloading Images to the Computer

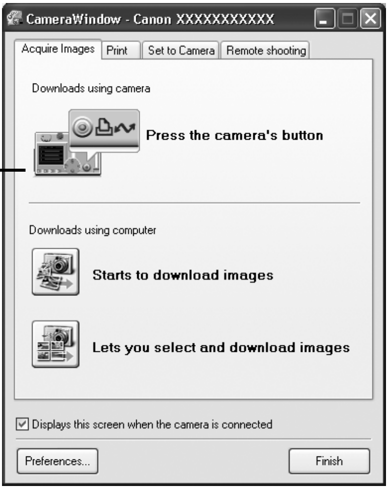
Begin by downloading the images to your computer. The downloading procedure is slightly different according to whether you are using a camera to computer connection (see below) or a memory card reader (p. 19).

Camera to Computer Connection

1 **Attach the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and the camera's DIGITAL Terminal. Prepare the camera for communication with the computer.**

> **Procedures for attaching the camera to the computer and placing it in the correct mode for connecting vary between camera models. See the *Camera User Guide*.**

The Camera Control Window will appear.


CameraWindow - Canon XXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Downloads using camera
Press the camera's button
Downloads using computer
Starts to download images
Lets you select and download images
Preferences...
Finish

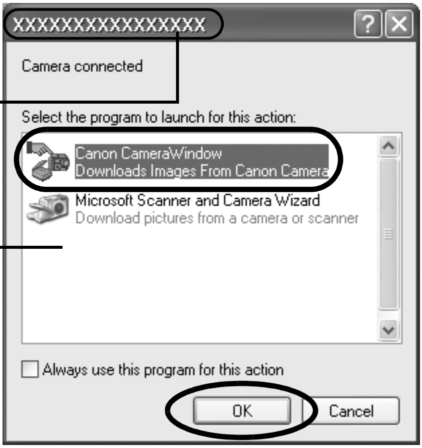
☑ Displays this screen when the camera is connected

Camera Control Window

First Time Camera is Connected to a Computer

Set the following settings the first time you connect the camera to the computer. These procedures are not required from the second connection onward.

Select [Canon CameraWindow] when a dialog (Events dialog) similar to that on the right displays and click [OK].


XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
?
Camera connected
Select the program to launch for this action:
Canon CameraWindow
Downloads Images From Canon Camera
Microsoft Scanner and Camera Wizard
Download pictures from a camera or scanner
☐ Always use this program for this action
OK
Cancel

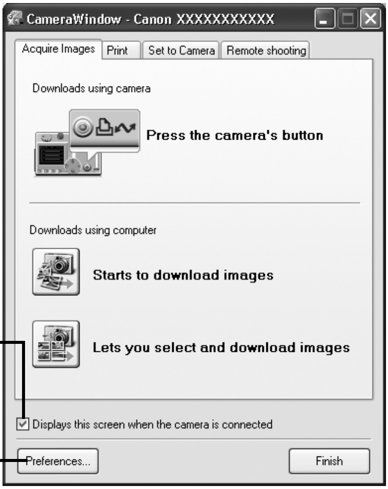
Your camera model name or [Canon Camera] will appear here.

Different programs may display according to your computer setup.

If this Events dialog does not appear, click the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [CameraWindow] and [CameraWindow].

2 Download the images.

Download the images using the camera or the computer. By default, the downloaded images are saved into the [My Pictures] folder.


CameraWindow - Canon XXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Downloads using camera
Press the camera's button
Downloads using computer
Starts to download images
Lets you select and download images
☑ Displays this screen when the camera is connected
Preferences...
Finish

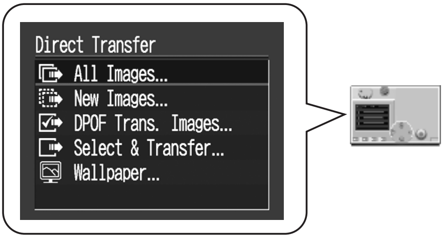
Placing a check mark here causes this window to automatically open when the camera and computer are connected.

You can adjust the settings, such as the type of image downloaded and the destination folder, by clicking [Preferences].

Using the Camera to Download Images (Direct Transfer Function)

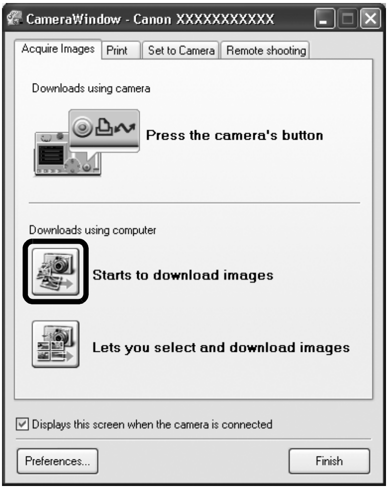
- If the conditions are right for the Direct Transfer function, the Direct Transfer settings menu will appear in the LCD monitor. In addition, the ⎙∿ (Print/Share) button will light if your camera is equipped with one.
- See the *Camera User Guide* for instructions regarding Direct Transfer settings and procedures.

Set the Direct Transfer settings on the camera and press the ⎙∿ (Print/Share) button or the [SET] button.


Direct Transfer
All Images...
New Images...
DPOF Trans. Images...
Select & Transfer...
Wallpaper...

Using the Computer to Download Images

Click [Starts to download images].

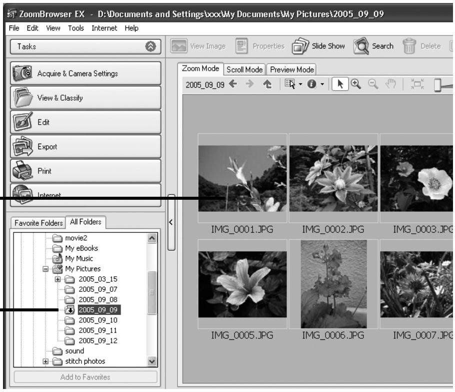

CameraWindow - Canon XXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Downloads using camera
Press the camera's button
Downloads using computer
Starts to download images
Lets you select and download images
Preferences...
Finish

☑ Displays this screen when the camera is connected

- By default, all the images that have yet to be downloaded will download.
- To download images that have had their transfer settings set with the camera, click [Preferences] and select [Images whose transfer settings were specified with the camera] as the image type to be downloaded.
- Click [Lets you select and download images] to show the camera images in a list, check the images before downloading and download only selected images.

The downloaded images will be saved into folders according to their shooting date.

By default, when downloading is complete, the thumbnails (tiny versions) of the downloaded images display in ZoomBrowser EX's Main Window.


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Search
Delete
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
Favorite Folders
All Folders
movie2
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
2005_03_15
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
sound
stitch photos
Add to Favorites
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
IMG_0006.JPG
IMG_0007.JPG

Thumbnail

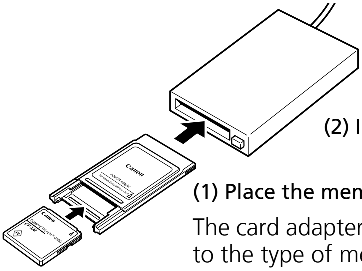
The downloaded symbol displays on downloaded folders (the symbol will disappear when you exit ZoomBrowser EX).

Next, print out the images (p. 21).

Memory Card Reader Connection

1 **Insert the memory card into the reader.**

Use a separately sold card adapter if required.
See the manual for the memory card reader for its connection and handling instructions.



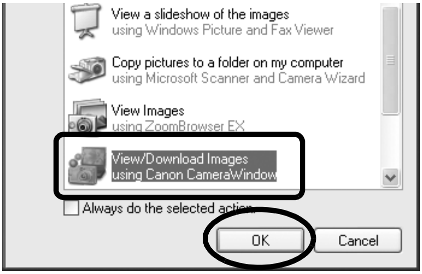
(2) Insert the loaded adapter into the slot.

(1) Place the memory card in an adapter if required.

The card adapter and memory card shape may vary according to the type of memory card your camera utilizes.

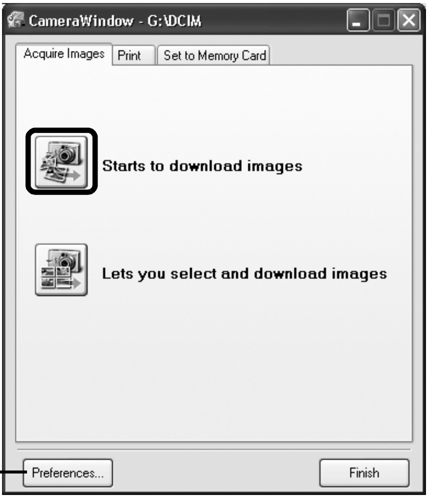
2 **Select [View/Download Images using Canon CameraWindow] when the dialog to the right appears and click [OK].**

The Camera Control Window will display.


View a slideshow of the images using Windows Picture and Fax Viewer
Copy pictures to a folder on my computer using Microsoft Scanner and Camera Wizard
View Images using ZoomBrowser EX
View/Download Images using Canon CameraWindow
☐ Always do the selected action.
OK
Cancel

If the dialog above fails to appear, click the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [CameraWindow] and [CameraWindow], and proceed to Step 3.

3 Click [Starts to download images].


CameraWindow - G:\DCIM
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Memory Card
Starts to download images
Lets you select and download images
Preferences...
Finish

You can adjust the settings, such as the type of image downloaded and the destination folder, by clicking [Preferences].

- By default, all the images that have yet to be downloaded will download to the [My Pictures] folder.
- To download images that have had their transfer settings set with the camera, click [Preferences] and select [Images whose transfer settings were specified with the camera] as the image type to be downloaded.
- Click [Lets you select and download images] to show the memory card images in a list, check the images before downloading and download only selected images.
- See *Memory Card Folder Structure* (p. 87) for information about memory card folder structures and file names.

The downloaded images are saved into folders according to the shooting date.

By default, when the download is complete, the thumbnails (tiny versions) of the downloaded images display in ZoomBrowser EX's main window.

Next, print out the images (p. 21).

Printing Images

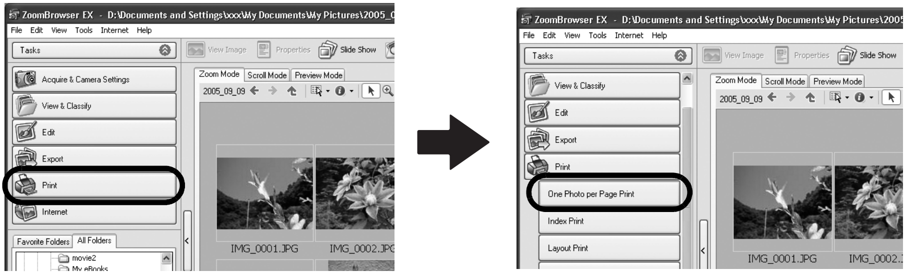
There are three ways in which images may be printed: One Photo per Page Print, Index Print and Layout Print. This section explains the One Photo per Page Print and Layout Print sections.

- Movies cannot be printed, but you can print stills after they have been extracted from movies and saved to files.
- To use the Index Print option, click [Print] in the Main Window, followed by [Index Print].

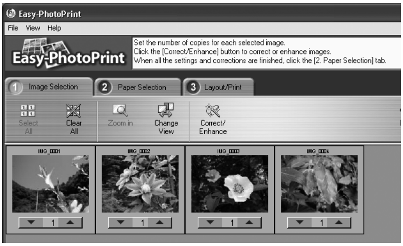
One Photo per Page Print

This option prints one image per page in a standard "photo" format. If you select multiple images, it will print them on the corresponding number of pages.

1 Click [Print] in ZoomBrowser EX's Main Window, followed by [One Photo Per Page Print].


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_0
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
Favorite Folders
All Folders
movie2
My eBooks
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
One Photo per Page Print
Index Print
Layout Print

- If you have installed the Easy-PhotoPrint program that accompanied a Canon-brand printer, you will proceed to the Easy-PhotoPrint printing window shown at the right when you select [One Photo Per Page Print] according to the default settings. If a window similar to it opens, read the Help menu for Easy-PhotoPrint for instructions to proceed.

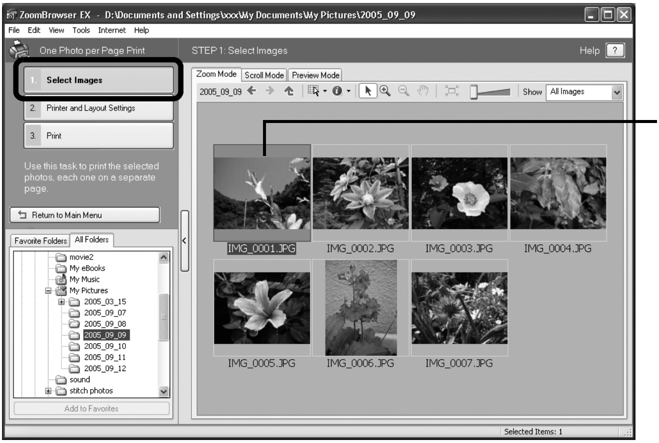

Easy-PhotoPrint
File View Help
Easy-PhotoPrint
1 Image Selection
2 Paper Selection
3 Layout/Print
Select All
Clear All
Zoom in
Change View
Correct/ Enhance
IMG_0001
IMG_0002
IMG_0003
IMG_0004
1
1
1
1

Set the number of copies for each selected image.
Click the [Correct/Enhance] button to correct or enhance images.
When all the settings and corrections are finished, click the [2. Paper Selection] tab.

- To proceed to the ZoomBrowser EX printing window as shown in Step 2 when you select [One Photo Per Page Print], click the [Tools] menu and select [Preferences], followed by the [Print] tab. Select [Use ZoomBrowser EX Print Functions].

2 **After confirming that [1. Select Images] is selected, select images.**

You can select multiple images by holding the [Ctrl] down while clicking on successive images.

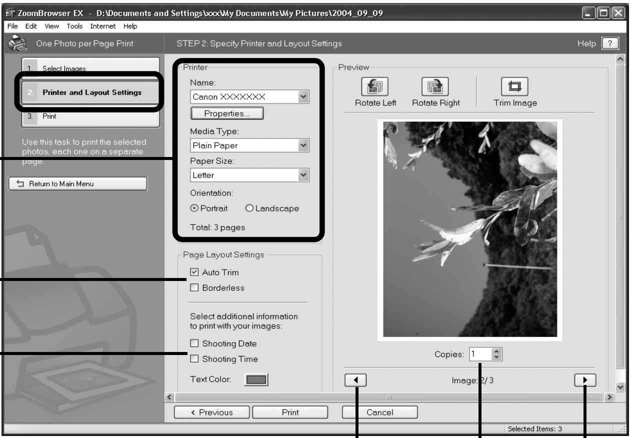

ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
One Photo per Page Print
STEP 1: Select Images
Help
1. Select Images
2. Printer and Layout Settings
3. Print
Return to Main Menu
Favorite Folders
All Folders
movie2
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
2005_03_15
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
sound
stitch photos
Add to Favorites
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
Show
All Images
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
IMG_0006.JPG
IMG_0007.JPG

Use this task to print the selected photos, each one on a separate page.

Selected Items: 1

The background of selected images changes to blue.

3 **Click [2. Printer and Layout Settings] and adjust the categories as you feel necessary.**


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2004_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
One Photo per Page Print
STEP 2: Specify Printer and Layout Settings
Help
1. Select Images
2. Printer and Layout Settings
3. Print
Return to Main Menu
Printer
Properties...
Page Layout Settings
Preview
Rotate Left
Rotate Right
Trim Image
Previous
Print
Cancel

Use this task to print the selected photos, each one on a separate page.

Name: Canon XXXXXXX

Media Type: Plain Paper

Paper Size: Letter

Orientation: ● Portrait ○ Landscape

Total: 3 pages

☑ Auto Trim

☐ Borderless

Select additional information to print with your images:

☐ Shooting Date

☐ Shooting Time

Text Color:

Copies: 1

Image: 2/ 3

Selected Items: 3

Selects the printer and the paper size etc.

Sets printing to "borderless," etc.

Place a check mark here to print shooting date/time information with images.

Sets the number of print copies

This button switches between images if multiple images were selected.

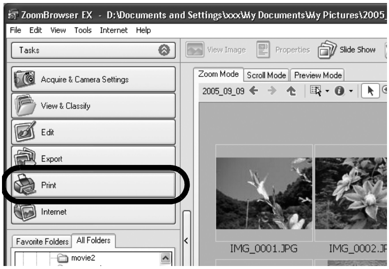
4 **Click [3. Print].**

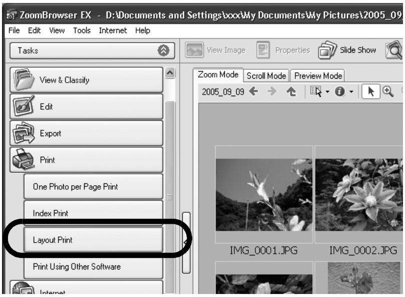
Printing will start.

Layout Print

This option uses the PhotoRecord printing utility to arrange multiple images on a single page and print them like an album.
This section explains the basic flow of steps to use PhotoRecord. Please see the PhotoRecord Help menu for detailed instructions.

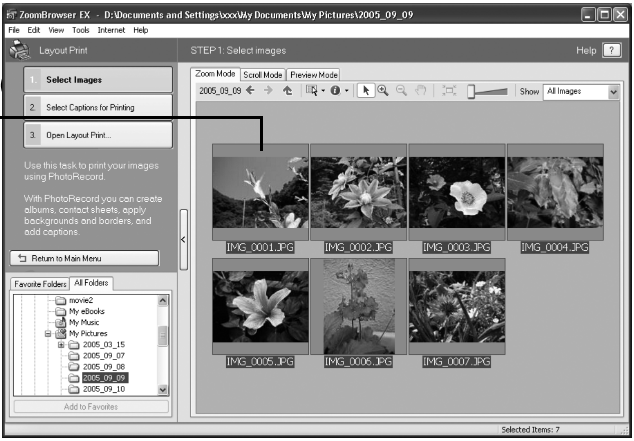
1 Click [Print] in ZoomBrowser EX's Main Window, followed by [Layout Print].


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
Favorite Folders
All Folders
movie2
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JF


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
One Photo per Page Print
Index Print
Layout Print
Print Using Other Software
Internet
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG

2 Confirm that [1. Select Images] is selected and proceed to select images.

You can select multiple images by holding the [Ctrl] key down while clicking on successive images.

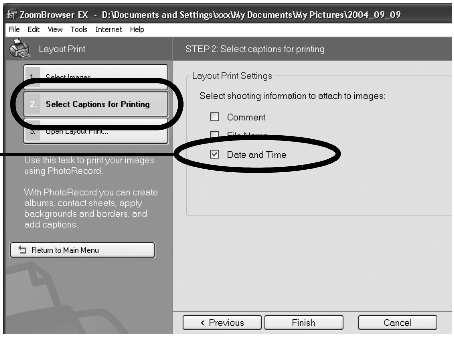

ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Layout Print
STEP 1: Select images
Help
1. Select Images
2. Select Captions for Printing
3. Open Layout Print...
Return to Main Menu
Favorite Folders
All Folders
movie2
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
2005_03_15
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
Add to Favorites
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
Show
All Images
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
IMG_0006.JPG
IMG_0007.JPG
Selected Items: 7

Use this task to print your images using PhotoRecord.

With PhotoRecord you can create albums, contact sheets, apply backgrounds and borders, and add captions.

The background of the selected image(s) will turn blue.

3 Click [2. Select Captions for Printing] and place a check mark beside the type of information that will be printed with the images.


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2004_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Layout Print
1. Select Images
2. Select Captions for Printing
3. Open Layout Print...
Return to Main Menu
< Previous
Finish
Cancel

STEP 2: Select captions for printing

Layout Print Settings

Select shooting information to attach to images:

☐ Comment
☐ File Name
☑ Date and Time

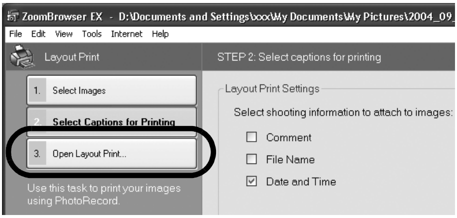
Use this task to print your images using PhotoRecord.

With PhotoRecord you can create albums, contact sheets, apply backgrounds and borders, and add captions.

If you select [Date and Time], for example, you can print the images with their shooting dates and times included.

You can add a comment to an image in the Properties Window (p. 32).

4 Click [3. Open Layout Print].


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2004_09_
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Layout Print
1. Select Images
2. Select Captions for Printing
3. Open Layout Print...

STEP 2: Select captions for printing

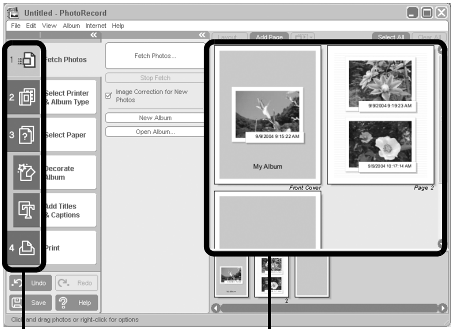
Layout Print Settings

Select shooting information to attach to images:

☐ Comment
☐ File Name
☑ Date and Time

Use this task to print your images using PhotoRecord.

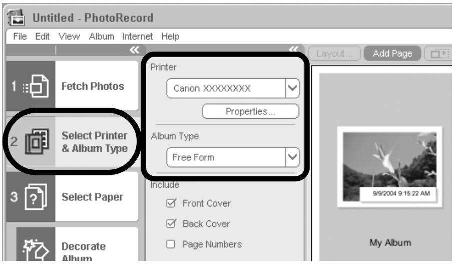
PhotoRecord will start, displaying the selected image and the information selected in Step 3 in the Album window. In addition, the steps that will take you through the printing process will display on the left side. Follow the steps in order to proceed.


Untitled - PhotoRecord
File Edit View Album Internet Help
1 Fetch Photos
2 Select Printer & Album Type
3 Select Paper
Decorate Album
Add Titles & Captions
4 Print
Undo
Redo
Save
Help
Fetch Photos...
Stop Fetch
Image Correction for New Photos
New Album
Open Album...
Layout
Add Page
Select All
Clear All
My Album
9/9/2004 9:15:22 AM
9/9/2004 9:19:23 AM
9/9/2004 10:17:14 AM
Front Cover
Page 2
Click and drag photos or right-click for options

Album Window
The selected images display here.

The printing procedures display here.

5 Click [2 Select Printer & Album Type]. Once you have chosen a printer, select [Free Form] in the Album type category.

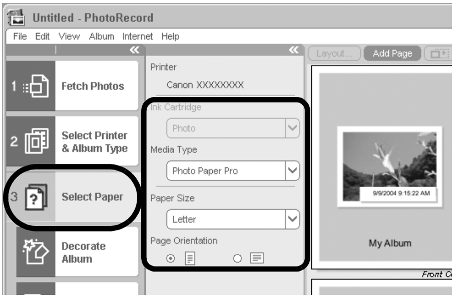

Untitled - PhotoRecord
File Edit View Album Internet Help
Layout... Add Page
1 Fetch Photos
2 Select Printer & Album Type
3 Select Paper
Decorate Album
Properties...
Include
My Album

Printer: Canon XXXXXXXX

Album Type: Free Form

☑ Front Cover
☑ Back Cover
☐ Page Numbers

6 Click [3 Select Paper] and select the paper size and orientation.


Untitled - PhotoRecord
File Edit View Album Internet Help
Layout... Add Page
1 Fetch Photos
2 Select Printer & Album Type
3 Select Paper
Decorate Album
My Album
Front C

Printer: Canon XXXXXXXX

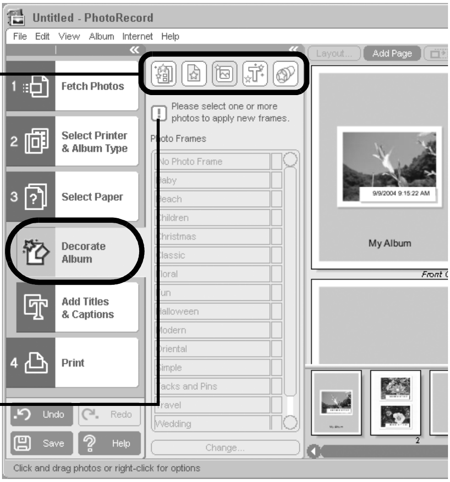
Ink Cartridge: Photo

Media Type: Photo Paper Pro

Paper Size: Letter

Page Orientation: ● ○

7 Click [Decorate Album] and change the design of the image background and border as desired.


Untitled - PhotoRecord
File Edit View Album Internet Help
Layout... Add Page
1 Fetch Photos
2 Select Printer & Album Type
3 Select Paper
Decorate Album
Add Titles & Captions
4 Print
Undo
Redo
Save
Help
Change...
Photo Frames
No Photo Frame
Baby
Beach
Children
Christmas
Classic
Floral
Fun
Halloween
Modern
Oriental
Simple
Tacks and Pins
Travel
Wedding
My Album
Front C

Please select one or more photos to apply new frames.

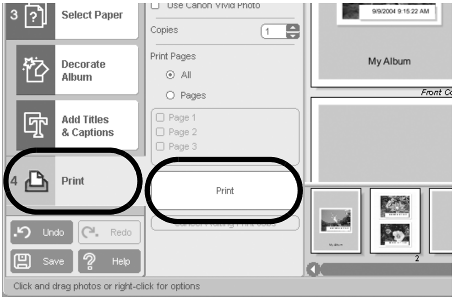
Click and drag photos or right-click for options

Click the [Themes], [Backgrounds], [Photo Frames], [Text Frames] or [Clipart] button to switch between selections.

Perform the procedures according to the instructions beside the [!] symbol.

- The [Themes] category provides consistent designs for use throughout an entire album.
- You can also click [Add Titles & Captions] to add text as a title or caption.

8 Click [4 Print], confirm the number of copies and other printing settings, and click [Print].


3 Select Paper
Decorate Album
Add Titles & Captions
4 Print
Undo
Redo
Save
Help
Use Canon Vivid Photo
Copies
Print Pages
All
Pages
Page 1
Page 2
Page 3
Print
9/9/2004 9:15:22 AM
My Album
Front C
2
Click and drag photos or right-click for options

Copies: 1

Print Pages: ● All ○ Pages

This will start printing.
To close PhotoRecord after printing is complete, click ☒. Click [Yes] to save the album or [No] to close it without saving. The ZoomBrowser EX window will reappear when the save procedure is complete.

There are numerous varieties of albums. Select one to suit your purposes. Please note that the available album types may vary slightly according to the printer in use.

Album Type	Description
One Photo Per Page	Prints one image on each sheet of paper.
One Photo Per Sheet	
Free Form	Allows images to be freely positioned on the page and printed.
Index	Prints thumbnails of the images and their shooting information Exif data*).
Fixed Size Photo	Allows image heights and widths to be specified and prints.
Mosaic	Lines up the specified number of images and prints.
Perforated Paper	Prints on perforated paper.
8-Sticker Label	Prints on 8-label sheets.

* The shooting information displayed in ZoomBrowser EX and the Exif data that can be printed using PhotoRecord differ slightly.

This chapter explained the ZoomBrowser EX basics. Once you have mastered them, try the advanced techniques.
Using the Software on the Windows Platform – Advanced Techniques (p. 27).

Using the Software on the Windows Platform – Advanced Techniques

This chapter explains various ZoomBrowser EX features.
Proceed to this chapter once you have mastered the basic ZoomBrowser EX procedures in the *Using the Software on the Windows Platform – The Basics* chapter.

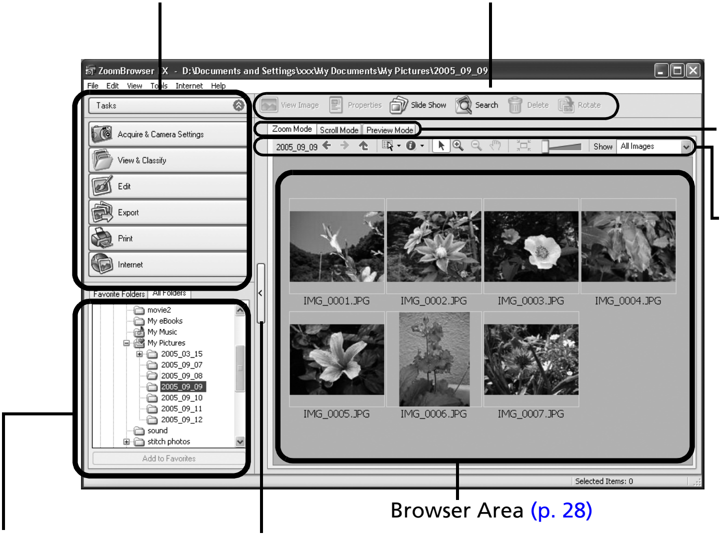
> To confirm whether your camera supports these functions, please refer to *Information about Your Camera* (p. 98).

The ZoomBrowser EX Windows

This section describes the principal ZoomBrowser EX windows: the Main Window, Viewer Window and Properties Window.

Main Window

This window is for displaying and organizing images downloaded to the computer.


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Search
Delete
Rotate
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
Show
All Images
Favorite Folders
All Folders
movie2
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
2005_03_15
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
sound
stitch photos
Add to Favorites
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
IMG_0006.JPG
IMG_0007.JPG
Selected Items: 0

Task Area (p. 28)

Function Buttons (p. 30)

Display Mode (p. 29)

Display Control Panel (p. 30)

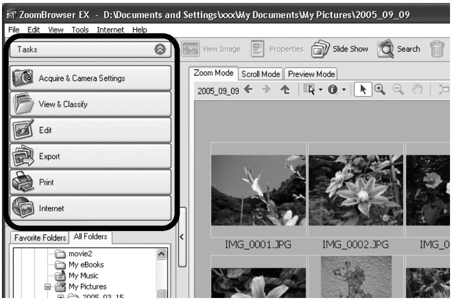
Browser Area (p. 28)

Folders Area (p. 28)

Switches between showing and hiding the Task Area and Folders Area.

Task Area

- ZoomBrowser EX's tasks are arranged here like an index.
- Click a Task button to carry out the desired task.
  These features are described in *ZoomBrowser EX Features* (p. 33)


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Search
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
Favorite Folders
All Folders
movie2
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG

Folders Area

- Use this area to select folders. The images in the selected folder display in the Browser Area. If you select a network drive in advance with Windows Explorer, you can display network folders, but you cannot add, change or delete those folders in the Browser Area.
- If you selected Favorite Folders, only the folders registered in advance as Favorite Folders will display. You are recommended to register a folder that you use frequently as one of the Favorite Folders. If you selected All Folders, all the folders will display.

Methods for Registering a Favorite Folder

- If [Favorite Folders] is displayed: click [Add] and select a folder.
- If [All Folders] is displayed: select a folder and click [Add to Favorites].
- To delete a folder in the Favorite Folders area, select a folder and click the [Delete] button.

Browser Area

- The images in the folder selected in the Folders Area will display here.
  The display style will vary according to your Display Mode selection.

Methods for Selecting Images in the Browser Area

- Selecting a single image: click on an image.
- Selecting multiple images: click on the first image and then hold the [Ctrl] key down while clicking on additional images.
- Selecting consecutive images: click on the first image and then hold the [Shift] key down while clicking on the last image.

- You can sort the image order in the Browser Area by file name, shooting date or other characteristics by clicking the [Tools] menu and selecting [View] and [Sort by].
- The following icons will display around images according to their attributes.

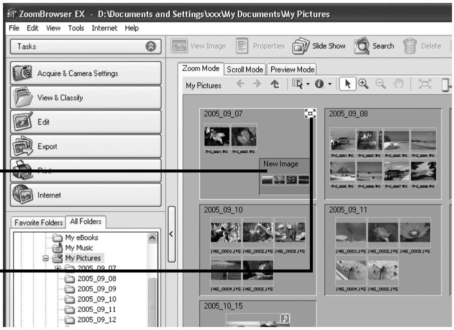
⧉	Images shot with the camera's Stitch Assist mode
RAW	RAW images
🎞	Movies
♪	Images with sound memo attachments
🔑	Protected images
⧉	Images shot with the camera's AEB function
↻	Images shot with the camera on end that are rotated in the display only

Display Mode

- Selects the display style for the Browser Area.

Zoom Mode

Displays all the images in a folder as thumbnail images. This mode is convenient for searching for images since many can be displayed at once.

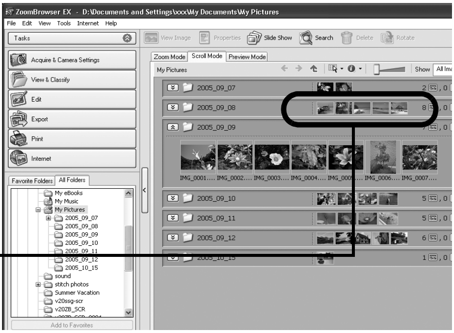

ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Search
Delete
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
My Pictures
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
New Image
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_10_15
Favorite Folders
All Folders
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12

If additional folders are nested within a folder, their images are displayed as thumbnails as well.

If you move the mouse cursor over a folder, ⛶ will display on the upper right. Clicking here displays that folder zoomed in.

Scroll Mode

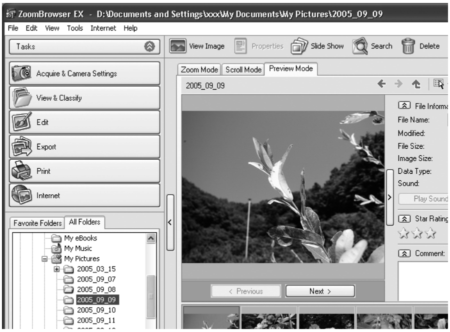
This mode is convenient for checking the images in multiple folders at once. If the displayed folder is at the highest level, then all thumbnails in the lower-level folders also display. You can change the folder level (folder depth) by clicking the [Tools] menu and selecting [Preferences].


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Search
Delete
Rotate
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
My Pictures
Show
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
IMG_0001.... IMG_0002.... IMG_0003.... IMG_0004.... IMG_0005.... IMG_0006.... IMG_0007....
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
2005_10_15
Favorite Folders
All Folders
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
2005_10_15
sound
stitch photos
Summer Vacation
v20ssg-scr
v2028_SCR
Add to Favorites

The images within nested folders also display.

Preview Mode

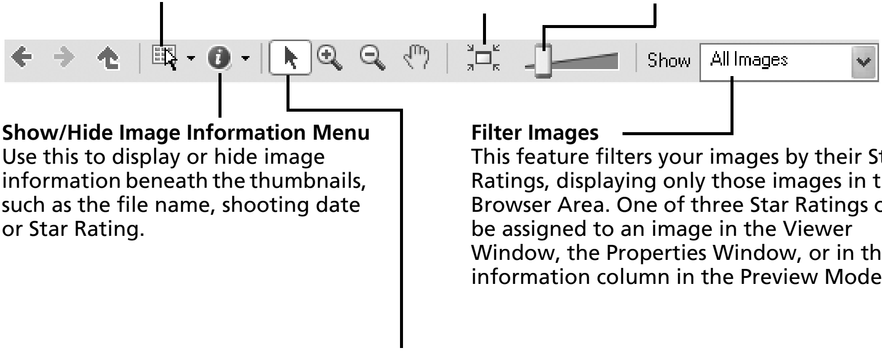
This mode displays the image at a larger size as well as the image information.


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2005_09_09
File Edit View Tools Internet Help
Tasks
View Image
Properties
Slide Show
Search
Delete
Acquire & Camera Settings
View & Classify
Edit
Export
Print
Internet
Zoom Mode
Scroll Mode
Preview Mode
2005_09_09
File Informa
File Name:
Modified:
File Size:
Image Size:
Data Type:
Sound:
Play Sound
Star Rating
Comment:
< Previous
Next >
Favorite Folders
All Folders
My eBooks
My Music
My Pictures
2005_03_15
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11

Positioning the mouse pointer over a thumbnail causes the image to appear at a higher magnification in a Mouse Over Window. You can turn off this function by clicking the ⓘ ▾ [Show Information], and removing the check mark from the [Show Mouse Over Windows] option.

Display Control Panel

- This panel adjusts the display settings for the Browser Area.



Selection Menu
Use this to select or deselect all the images in the Browser Area.

Fit to Window
Changes the thumbnail size to fit them into the window.

Display Size
Changes the size of the thumbnail in the Browser Area.

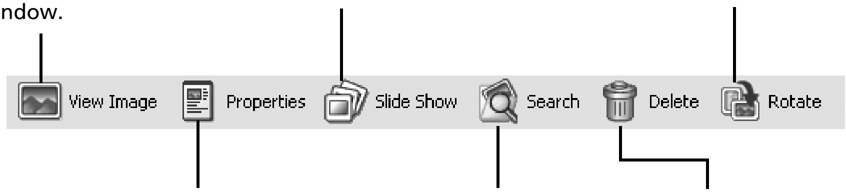
Show/Hide Image Information Menu
Use this to display or hide image information beneath the thumbnails, such as the file name, shooting date or Star Rating.

Filter Images
This feature filters your images by their Star Ratings, displaying only those images in the Browser Area. One of three Star Ratings can be assigned to an image in the Viewer Window, the Properties Window, or in the information column in the Preview Mode.

Select Button
Use this to select images in Zoom mode.

Function Buttons

- These buttons are available for executing various functions.



View Image Button
Displays the selected image or movie in the Viewer Window.

Slide Show Button
Starts a slide show of the selected images.

Rotate Button
Rotates the selected image.

Properties Button
Displays information about the selected image in the Properties Window.

Search Button
Searches for images using such criteria as the Star Rating, modification date, shooting date, comments or keywords.

Delete Button
Deletes selected images or folders.

Viewer Window

Double-click an image in the Browser Area to display it in the Viewer Window.

Edit Menu
You can edit, eliminating red eyes, adjusting colors, cropping and inputting titles. You can also use it to start up other programs for editing.

Print Button
Prints the displayed image.

Display AF Frame
Displays the AF Frame (area used to focus).

Shooting Information Display Button
Displays image shooting information.

Synchronize Button
Synchronizes the display settings when multiple images are displayed.

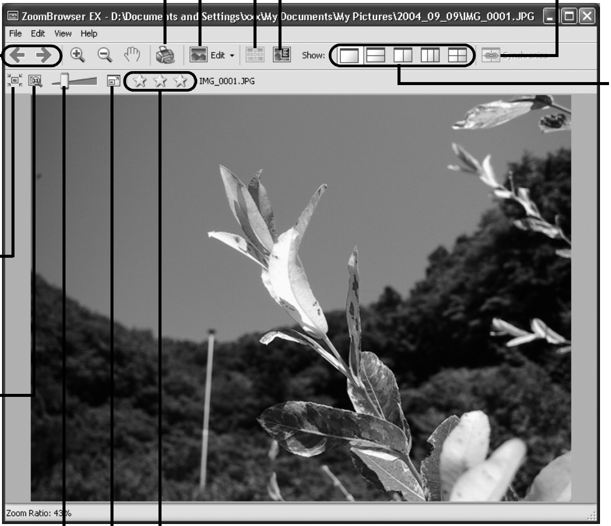

ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\My Pictures\2004_09_09\IMG_0001.JPG
File
Edit
View
Help
Edit
Show:
Synchronize
IMG_0001.JPG
Zoom Ratio: 43%

Image Selector Button
Switches between images.

Displays images in the Viewer Window at their actual size.

Sets the image display size to the size in the Viewer Window.

Split Screen Button
Displays multiple images at once. This is handy for comparing images.

Zoom
Changes the image zoom setting.

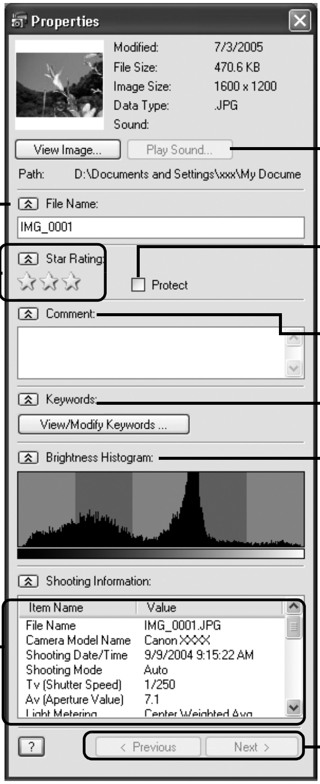
Star Rating
Sets the Star Rating for an image.

Full Screen Button
Displays the image in the full screen mode. Click the image or press any key on the keyboard to restore the normal display mode.

- If a RAW image is displayed, the [Display Original Image] button displays beneath it. Clicking this button displays the converted image in the Viewer Window.
- If you are using Windows XP and display a movie file, the 🎞 (Capture Still Frame) button will display beside the Star Ratings. Clicking this button extracts still images from movies.

Properties Window

The Properties Window displays when you select an image in the Browser Area and click the Properties button. The Properties Window does not display in the Preview Mode.



Properties

Modified: 7/3/2005
File Size: 470.6 KB
Image Size: 1600 x 1200
Data Type: .JPG
Sound:

Path: D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Docume

File Name: IMG_0001

Star Rating: ☆☆☆

☐ Protect

Comment:

Keywords:

Brightness Histogram:

Shooting Information:

Item Name	Value
File Name	IMG_0001.JPG
Camera Model Name	Canon XXXX
Shooting Date/Time	9/9/2004 9:15:22 AM
Shooting Mode	Auto
Tv (Shutter Speed)	1/250
Av (Aperture Value)	7.1
Light Metering	Center Weighted Avg

Shows or hides categories.

Star Rating
Sets the Star Rating for an image.

Shooting Information
Displays detailed information about the shooting settings when the image was captured, such as the shutter speed or exposure setting. The camera model will determine what information is displayed.

Plays a sound memo attached to an image.

Protect
Prevents an image from being overwritten or deleted.

Comment
You can type a comment here.

Keywords
Sets the keywords used in searches.

Brightness Histogram
A graph of the highlights and shadows distribution in an image.

Image Selector Buttons
Switches between images.

ZoomBrowser EX Features

This section briefly introduces the Task Area functions.

To confirm whether your camera supports these functions, please refer to *Information about Your Camera* (p. 98).

Acquire & Camera Settings

Acquire & Camera Settings

Opens the Camera Control Window, which lets you perform the following operations.

Acquire Images

Downloads images from the camera/memory card (s. 16 – 19).
Additionally, you can download sound files recorded with the Sound Recorder function on the camera. Refer to the ZoomBrowser EX Help for download instructions.

Print Images

Selects and prints the images in a camera or memory card. You can print numerous ways, using DPOF settings, the Index Print option, One Photo per Page Print option, or by selecting images before printing.

Set to Camera

Sets camera settings, such as the My Camera settings (p. 45). It also uploads images from the computer to the camera/memory card.

Remote Shooting

Allows you to operate the camera shutter from the computer (p. 41).

View & Classify

View & Classify

View as a Slide Show

Starts a slide show of the images selected in the Browser Area.

Rename Multiple Files

Changes the file names of the selected images in a single pass.

Classify into Folder

Classifies images and saves them into a specified folder.

Search

Performs image searches using criteria such as the Star Rating, modification date, shooting date, comments or keywords. Star Ratings, comments and keywords can be set in the image information column in the Preview Mode or in the Properties Window.

Edit

Edit Image

Allows you to perform image editing, such as cropping, image correction and red-eye correction. You can also use it to start other image editing programs.

Stitch Photos

Merges multiple images and creates a single large panoramic image (p. 44).

Edit Movie

Edits movies or still images strung together. You can add text as titles, or background music, and apply various effects (p. 37).

Process RAW Images

Converts RAW images into standard images. You can adjust the image brightness, contrast and color balance among other attributes during conversion (p. 38).

Export

Export Still Images

Allows you to change the image size or type, and export it as a new image.

Export Movies

Allows you to change the movie size or type, and export it as a new movie.

Extract frames from a movie

Extracts still images from movies over a specified interval and saves them as image files (Windows XP only).

Export Shooting Properties

Allows you to select the necessary data from the shooting information and export it as a text file.

Export as a Screen Saver

Exports the image as a screen saver file.

Export as a Wallpaper

Exports the image as a wallpaper file.

Backup to CD

Copies images to a CD-R/RW disk for backup.

The Backup to CD function can only be used on computers satisfying the following requirements.

- Windows XP is preinstalled
- A CD-R/RW drive is included as standard equipment

Print

One Photo per Page Print

Prints one image per page (p. 21).
You can print "photo" prints easily.

Index Print

Lines up small versions of the images in rows and prints.

Layout Print

Allows you to arrange multiple images on one page and print them like an album. You can also insert captions and titles (p. 23).

Print Using Other Software

Select the software to use and then print.

Internet

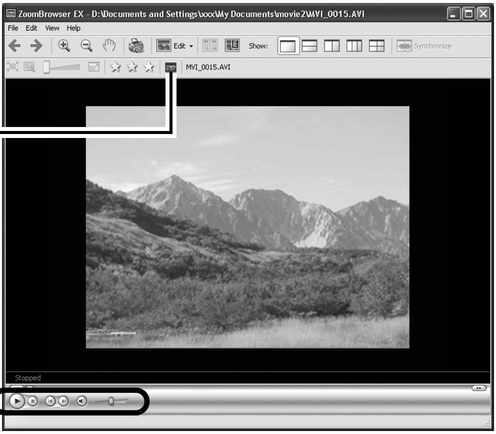
Email Images

Converts the selected images to the appropriate size for transmission by e-mail. You can also use it to automatically start an e-mail program after conversion.

- To return to the previous screen after selecting a task, click [Return to Main Menu] at the bottom of the task screen.
- Various Help functions are available in ZoomBrowser EX. Click the [Help] menu, [?] button or [Help] button to display topics about operational procedures or the functions available.

Replaying Movies

1 **Double-click an image with a movie icon in ZoomBrowser EX's Browser Area.**
The Viewer Window will open and play the movie.


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\movie2\MVI_0015.AVI
File Edit View Help
Edit
Show:
Synchronize
MVI_0015.AVI
Stopped

You can save the displayed scene as a still image by clicking here.

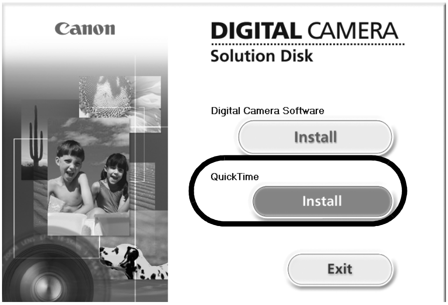
You can control the movie's playback and sound volume.

Windows 2000, Windows Me and Windows 98 SE

QuickTime is required to play and edit movies. To install QuickTime, please follow these procedures.

1. Place the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk in the CD-ROM drive.
   If the installer panel fails to appear automatically, display it using the procedures in the *How to Display the Installer Panel* section (p. 12).

2 Click the QuickTime [Install] button.


Canon
DIGITAL CAMERA
Solution Disk
Digital Camera Software
Install
QuickTime
Install
Exit

Follow the onscreen instructions to proceed with the installation.

Editing Movies

You can create and edit movies: link movies and stills that have been downloaded to your computer, add background music, superimpose titles and other text, and apply various effects to the movies.

- The QuickTime program is required to replay or edit movies on the Windows 2000, Windows Me or Windows 98 SE platform or to edit movies on the Windows XP platform. Install it during procedures in the "*Replaying Movies*" topic in the *Windows 2000, Windows Me and Windows 98 SE* section (p. 36).
- Movies are saved as Motion JPEG AVI movies.

1 Click [Edit] in ZoomBrowser EX's Main Window, followed by [Edit Movie].

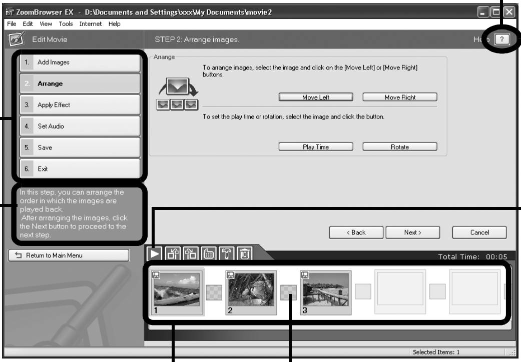
2 Click [1. Add Images] and select the image (movie or still) you wish to edit.

You can select multiple movies or stills.

3 Follow the steps at the left of the window to edit the movie and save it.

Follow these steps to proceed.

Click this button for detailed operational instructions.


ZoomBrowser EX - D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Documents\movie2
File
Edit
View
Tools
Internet
Help
Edit Movie
STEP 2: Arrange images.
Help
?
1. Add Images
2. Arrange
3. Apply Effect
4. Set Audio
5. Save
6. Exit
Arrange
Move Left
Move Right
Play Time
Rotate
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Return to Main Menu
Total Time: 00:05
1
2
3
Selected Items: 1

To arrange images, select the image and click on the [Move Left] or [Move Right] buttons.

To set the play time or rotation, select the image and click the button.

In this step, you can arrange the order in which the images are played back.
After arranging the images, click the Next button to proceed to the next step.

Instructions

Click this button to play the movie being edited.

Storyboard Area
Displays thumbnails of the selected images.
Links images in order from left to right.

Transition Effects Box
Appears between adjacent images and displays the symbols of the transition effects linking images.

Converting RAW Images

RAW images are extremely high-quality images that are not subject to any deterioration due to compression processing. Since they are a special type of image, they cannot be opened by many image editing programs. It is first necessary to convert them into standard image files.

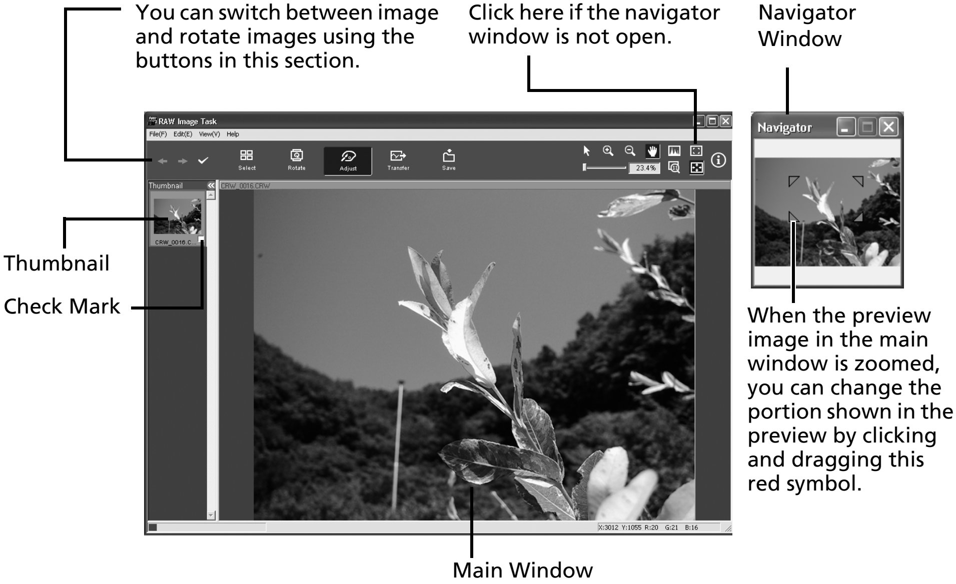
- See *Information about Your Camera* (p. 98) to determine whether your camera model supports this function.
- See the *Camera User Guide* for information about the camera settings for shooting RAW images.

Procedures for Converting RAW Images

1 Select a RAW image in ZoomBrowser EX's Browser Area.

2 Click [Edit], followed by [Process RAW Images].

Click [OK] when a window displaying procedures for converting and adjusting RAW images appears.
The Main Window, the Navigator window and the Image Quality Adjustment Window will display.


RAW Image Task
File(F) Edit(E) View(V) Help
Select
Rotate
Adjust
Transfer
Save
23.4%
Thumbnail
CRW_0016.CRW
X:3012 Y:1055 R:20 G:21 B:16
Navigator

You can switch between image and rotate images using the buttons in this section.

Click here if the navigator window is not open.

Navigator Window

Thumbnail

Check Mark

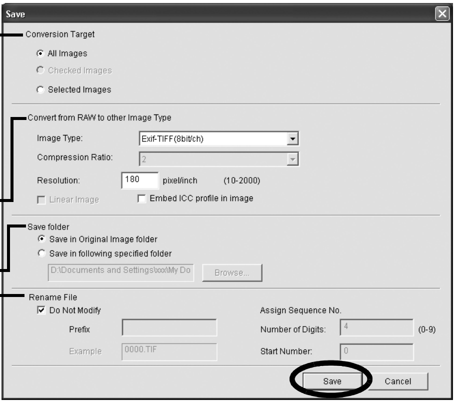
When the preview image in the main window is zoomed, you can change the portion shown in the preview by clicking and dragging this red symbol.

Main Window

3 **Adjust the image quality as required in the Image Quality Adjustment Window.**

This window is explained in the *Functions of the Image Quality Adjustment Window* section (p. 40).

4 **Click 💾 (Save), set the file type and destination, and then click [Save].**



Save

Conversion Target
● All Images
○ Checked Images
○ Selected Images

Convert from RAW to other Image Type
Image Type: Exif-TIFF(8bit/ch)
Compression Ratio: 2
Resolution: 180 pixel/inch (10-2000)
☐ Linear Image
☐ Embed ICC profile in image

Save folder
● Save in Original Image folder
○ Save in following specified folder
D:\Documents and Settings\xxx\My Do

Rename File
☑ Do Not Modify
Prefix
Example 0000.TIF
Assign Sequence No.
Number of Digits: 4 (0-9)
Start Number: 0

Selects the images for saving with these settings.

Select the method of changing the image type.

Set the file destination

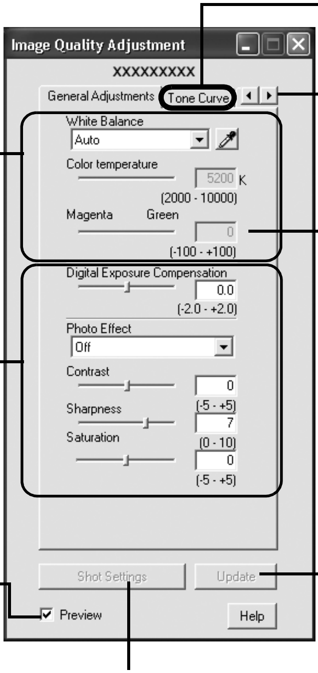
You can also change the file name

This will convert the image.

5 **Click the ☒ button in the Main window.**

Functions of the Image Quality Adjustment Window

The following adjustments can be made in the Image Quality Adjustment Window. The available settings may vary depending on the camera used.



White Balance: Auto

Color temperature: 5200 K (2000 - 10000)

Magenta Green: 0 (-100 - +100)

Digital Exposure Compensation: 0.0 (-2.0 - +2.0)

Photo Effect: Off

Contrast: 0 (-5 - +5)

Sharpness: 7 (0 - 10)

Saturation: 0 (-5 - +5)

☑ Preview

Tone Curve Tab
You can set the levels for the RGB channels separately or together.

Advanced Adjustments Tab
You can select such settings as the output color space.

This section adjusts the white balance according to the light source and color temperature.

This section adjusts the digital exposure compensation, photo effect, contrast, sharpness, and saturation.

If you cannot set the desired setting with the slider on the left, directly enter the setting here.

The effect of the settings above can be viewed immediately if you place a check mark here.

Applies the settings to the displayed image

Restores all settings to the settings stored in the camera at the time of shooting.

You can change the coloration of the image to your preferred settings when you convert a RAW image. You can also select preset color schemes, such as Positive Film. Furthermore, you can add your own color schemes (My Color) to apply to other RAW images when they are being converted.

Operating the Shutter Remotely

You can record still images by using a computer to control the shutter of a connected camera. This is particularly useful for checking images on the larger display of the computer as you record them and for high volume photography without worrying about filling the camera's memory card.

Preparing for Remote Shooting

1 Attach the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and the camera's DIGITAL terminal and place the camera in the correct mode for connecting.

- Methods for connecting the camera to the computer and placing it in the correct mode for connecting vary between camera models. Please refer to the *Camera User Guide*.
- Perform the settings described in *First Time Camera is Connected to a Computer* (p. 17) the first time you connect the camera to the computer.

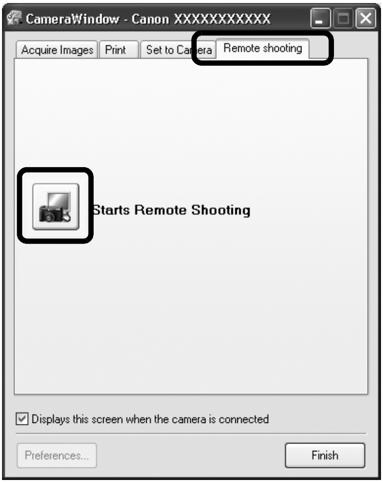
The Camera Control Window will display.

2 Open the lens cover or remove the lens cap on models equipped with them.

Proceed to the next step if your model does not have one.

3 Click the [Remote shooting] tab.

4 Click [Starts Remote Shooting].


CameraWindow - Canon XXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Starts Remote Shooting
☑ Displays this screen when the camera is connected
Preferences...
Finish

5 Select a destination for the captured images and click [OK].

RemoteCapture Task Window

The RemoteCapture Task window has the following features.

Shows/Hides the viewfinder or detailed settings area.

Size and Resolution Selector
Selects the size and resolution at which images are captured.

Rotation Settings
Sets the rotation parameters for images after they are captured.

You can add comments to images by placing a check mark here and typing text in the boxes below.

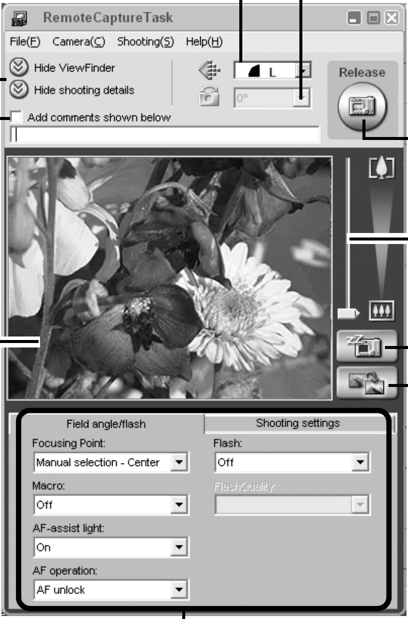
Release Button
Releases the shutter.

Slide this to zoom the camera in or out.

Viewfinder Display
Click the [Start/Stop Viewfinder] button while a connection to the camera is open to display the image appearing in the camera's viewfinder.

Start/Stop Viewfinder Button
Starts or stops the viewfinder display.

Refresh Button
Resets the exposure, focus and white balance.


RemoteCaptureTask
File(F)
Camera(C)
Shooting(S)
Help(H)
Hide ViewFinder
Hide shooting details
L
0°
Release
☐ Add comments shown below
Field angle/flash
Shooting settings
FlashQuality:

Focusing Point: Manual selection - Center

Flash: Off

Macro: Off

AF-assist light: On

AF operation: AF unlock

Set the basic camera settings here.

- The settings available in the RemoteCapture Task window vary between camera models.
- RemoteCapture Task locks the exposure and focus settings for the subject matter in the Viewfinder section. If the lighting or distance to the subject changes, click to reset these settings.

Remote Shooting

Ensure that you turn off your computer’s standby mode before you begin remote shooting. The device performance cannot be guaranteed if the computer enters the standby mode.

1 **Click and check the subject in the viewfinder.**

2 **Change the image size or resolution, the rotation settings and the settings at the bottom of the window as required.**

If you intend to hold the camera vertically to photograph a subject, you can save the image to the computer with the correct orientation if you set the rotation settings in advance.

If your camera is equipped with the Auto Rotate function and you set it to On, the image will automatically be rotated and appear in the correct viewing orientation in the RemoteCapture Task window.

3 **Click the [Release] button.**

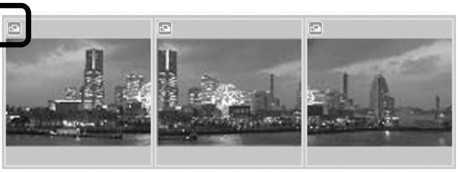
- You can release the shutter by pressing the camera’s shutter button or the keyboard’s space key.
- Other than the shutter button, the camera's buttons and switches, including the zoom, cannot be operated while the camera is being controlled with the Remote Shooting function.
- You may notice that the interval between the shutter release and activation is slightly longer for remote shooting than when the camera is used independently.

Merging Panoramic Images – PhotoStitch

You can create a wide panoramic image by merging several images. It is easier to merge images if they are shot with the camera's Stitch Assist mode because PhotoStitch can automatically detect the image order and orientation.

Images Shot in Stitch Assist Mode

A sequence of images shot in Stitch Assist mode is saved into a single folder when it is downloaded from the camera. In addition, the symbol below displays by the image in the Browser Area.



Symbol displayed by images shot in Stitch Assist mode.

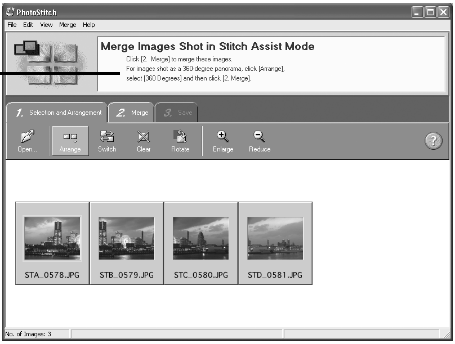
- See the *Camera User Guide* for information about shooting in Stitch Assist mode.
- Images shot in Stitch Assist mode with a wide converter, teleconverter or close-up lens cannot be merged accurately.

Starting PhotoStitch

1 Click [Edit] in the ZoomBrowser EX’s Main Window and click [Stitch Photos].

2 Click [1. Select Images] and select several images in the Browser Area.

3 Click [2. Open PhotoStitch].


PhotoStitch
File
Edit
View
Merge
Help
1. Selection and Arrangement
2. Merge
3. Save
Open...
Arrange
Switch
Clear
Rotate
Enlarge
Reduce
STA_0578.JPG
STB_0579.JPG
STC_0580.JPG
STD_0581.JPG
No. of Images: 3

Merge Images Shot in Stitch Assist Mode

Click [2. Merge] to merge these images.
For images shot as a 360-degree panorama, click [Arrange],
select [360 Degrees] and then click [2. Merge].

Instructions

4 Merge the images following the instructions in the guidance panel at the top of the PhotoStitch window.

Enjoy Customizing Your Camera with the My Camera Settings

The start-up image, start-up sound, shutter sound, operation sound, and self-timer sound are called the My Camera settings. You can add your favorite images and sounds from your computer to the My Camera settings. This topic explains how to upload the My Camera settings saved onto your computer to the camera and vice versa.

Displaying the My Camera Window

1 Attach the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and the camera's DIGITAL terminal and place the camera in the correct mode for connecting.

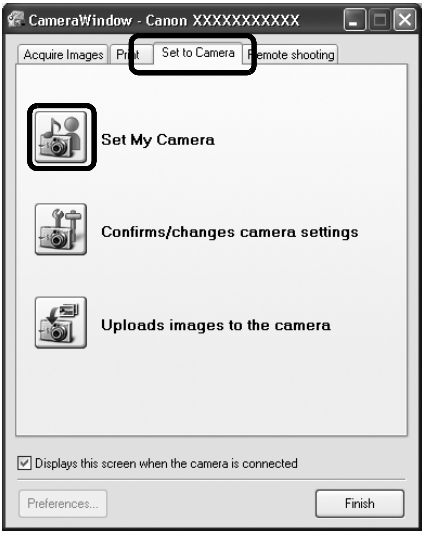
- Methods for connecting the camera to the computer and placing it in the correct mode for connecting vary between camera models. Please refer to the *Camera User Guide*.
- Perform the settings described in *First Time Camera is Connected to a Computer* (p. 17) the first time you connect the camera to the computer.

The Camera Control Window will display.

2 Click the [Set to Camera] tab.

3 Click [Set My Camera].

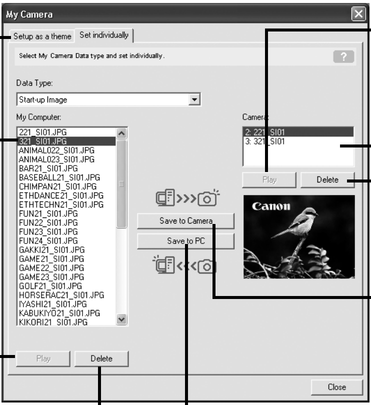
The My Camera window will display.


CameraWindow - Canon XXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Set My Camera
Confirms/changes camera settings
Uploads images to the camera
☑ Displays this screen when the camera is connected
Preferences...
Finish

The My Camera Window Features

ZoomBrowser EX already contains several pre-recorded My Camera settings. You can check these items with the My Camera window.

Tabs
Click here to switch between adjusting the settings individually or in themed sets.



Select My Camera Data type and set individually.

Data Type: Start-up Image

221_SI01.JPG
321_SI01.JPG
ANIMAL022_SI01.JPG
ANIMAL023_SI01.JPG
BAR21_SI01.JPG
BASEBALL21_SI01.JPG
CHIMPAN21_SI01.JPG
ETHDANCE21_SI01.JPG
ETHTECHN21_SI01.JPG
FUN21_SI01.JPG
FUN22_SI01.JPG
FUN23_SI01.JPG
FUN24_SI01.JPG
GAKKI21_SI01.JPG
GAME21_SI01.JPG
GAME22_SI01.JPG
GAME23_SI01.JPG
GOLF21_SI01.JPG
HORSERAC21_SI01.JPG
IYASHI21_SI01.JPG
KABUKIYO21_SI01.JPG
KIKORI21_SI01.JPG

2: 221_SI01
3: 321_SI01

Displays the list of settings files saved onto the computer.

Play Button
Plays the audio from the selected settings file.

Delete Button
Deletes a settings file from the computer.

Play Button
Plays the audio from the settings file in the camera.

Displays the settings in the camera.

Delete Button
Deletes a settings file from the camera.

Save to Camera Button
Saves a computer settings file onto the camera.

Save to PC Button
Saves a camera settings file onto the computer.

Saving the My Camera Settings to the Camera

- My Camera settings can be selected and saved in either of two ways to the camera: individually or in theme sets.
- The "Animal" theme, for example, features an animal in the start-up image and animal calls in each of the sound files. The names of the prepared files for the various My Camera settings themes all begin with the same root name. The start-up image and sound files in the "Animal" theme, for example, all begin with "Animal~".

Do not detach the interface cable, turn the camera power off or disconnect the camera from the computer while the My Camera settings are being saved to the camera or the settings from the camera are being saved to the computer.

1 **Select the [Setup as a theme] tab in the My Camera window.**

To set the start-up image or sound individually, click the [Set individually] tab and select it.

2 **Select the settings file you wish to save to the camera from the My Computer list.**

3 **Select the setting from the Camera list that you would like to change and click [Save to Camera].**

This concludes the process of saving the My Camera settings to the camera.
The Camera list setting will change to the selected file. If a setting for this category has previously been saved to the camera, it will be overwritten.

Repeat steps 1–3 as required.
To use this data on the camera, change the start-up image and sound settings on the camera itself. Please see the *Camera User Guide* for these instructions.

Saving the Camera's My Camera Settings to the Computer

1 **Select the [Setup as a theme] tab in the My Camera window.**

To set the start-up image or sound individually, click the [Set individually] tab and select it.

2 **Select the settings files from the Camera list that you wish to save to the computer.**

3 **Click [Save to PC].**

4 **Add a name to the settings file you are saving and click [OK].**

This concludes the process of saving the My Camera settings to the computer.
Repeat steps 1–4 as required.

Adding New Data to the My Camera Window

Create a new image or sound file and add it to the My Camera window.

- Adding Image and Sound Files After Creating Them

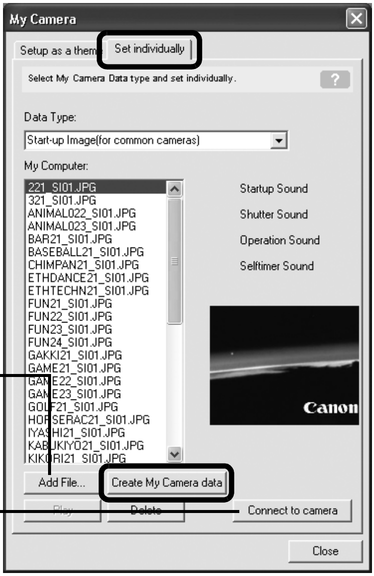
Adding Original Start-up Images and Sounds After Creating Them

You can effortlessly create start-up image and sound files using the *My Camera Maker* program.

1 Click the [Edit] menu in the ZoomBrowser EX Main Window and select [Manage My Camera].

The My Camera window will display.

2 Click the [Set individually] tab in the My Camera window, followed by the [Create My Camera Data] button.

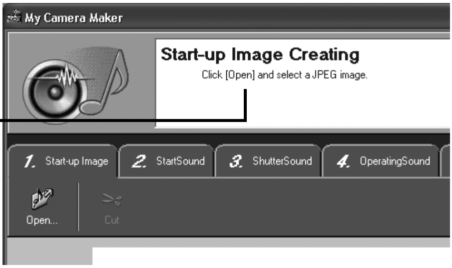

My Camera
Setup as a theme
Set individually
Select My Camera Data type and set individually.
Data Type:
Start-up Image(for common cameras)
My Computer:
221_SI01.JPG
321_SI01.JPG
ANIMAL022_SI01.JPG
ANIMAL023_SI01.JPG
BAR21_SI01.JPG
BASEBALL21_SI01.JPG
CHIMPAN21_SI01.JPG
ETHDANCE21_SI01.JPG
ETHTECHN21_SI01.JPG
FUN21_SI01.JPG
FUN22_SI01.JPG
FUN23_SI01.JPG
FUN24_SI01.JPG
GAKKI21_SI01.JPG
GAME21_SI01.JPG
GAME22_SI01.JPG
GAME23_SI01.JPG
GOLF21_SI01.JPG
HORSERAC21_SI01.JPG
IYASHI21_SI01.JPG
KABUKIYO21_SI01.JPG
KIKORI21_SI01.JPG
Startup Sound
Shutter Sound
Operation Sound
Selftimer Sound
Canon
Add File...
Create My Camera data
Play
Delete
Connect to camera
Close

Add File Button
Adds images and sound files for use as settings files. Added files display in the list.

Connect to camera Button
Connects to the camera.

My Camera Maker will start.

3 Follow the instructions at the top part of the My Camera Maker window and create image or sound files.


My Camera Maker
Start-up Image Creating
Click [Open] and select a JPEG image.
1. Start-up Image
2. StartSound
3. ShutterSound
4. OperatingSound
Open...
Cut

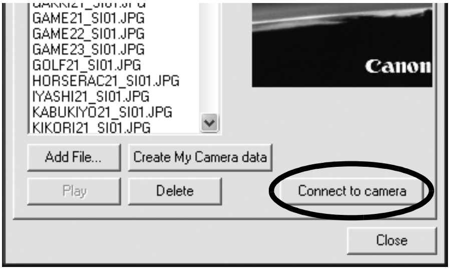
Instructions

4 **Once you have saved the file, click ⊗ and close the My Camera Maker window.**

You have now succeeded in adding the file as a settings file to the computer.

5 **To connect to the camera, click [Connect to Camera].**

You can add the settings files you just added to the computer to the camera using the same procedures as in *Saving the My Camera Settings to the Camera* (p. 47).


GAME21_SI01.JPG
GAME22_SI01.JPG
GAME23_SI01.JPG
GOLF21_SI01.JPG
HORSERAC21_SI01.JPG
IYASHI21_SI01.JPG
KABUKIYO21_SI01.JPG
KIKORI21_SI01.JPG
Canon
Add File...
Create My Camera data
Play
Delete
Connect to camera
Close

- Use settings like those below when creating an image file for the start-up image using an image editing program other than *My Camera Maker.*

  Compression Method : JPEG (Baseline JPEG)
  Sampling Rate : 4:2:0 or 4:2:2
  Image Size (w x h) : 320 x 240 pixels

- Use settings like those below when creating a sound file using a sound recording program other than *My Camera Maker.*

  Compression Method : WAV (Monaural)
  Quantifying Bits : 8 bit
  Sampling Frequency : 11.025 kHz or 8.000 kHz

  Use the following lengths as guidelines for the length of sound file that can be saved to the camera.

Type	Duration in Seconds	
	11.025 kHz	8.000 kHz
Start-Up Sound	1.0 sec. or less	1.3 sec. or less
Shutter Sound	0.3 sec. or less	0.4 sec. or less
Operation Sound	0.3 sec. or less	0.4 sec. or less
Self-Timer Sound	2.0 sec. or less	2.0 sec. or less

Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – Preparations

This chapter explains the basic procedures for installing the software. Read this material before you connect the camera to the computer for the first time.

Installing the Software

Start by installing the software from the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk.

See *ArcSoft PhotoStudio* (p. 82) for details on how to install ArcSoft PhotoStudio.

Items to Prepare

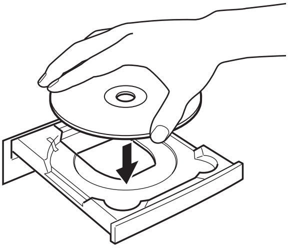
- Your camera and computer
- Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk
- Interface cable supplied with the camera

Installation Procedures

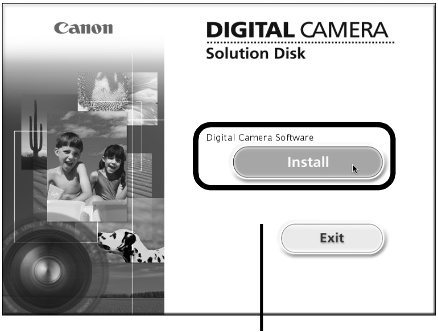
1 Close any programs that are running.

2 Place the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk in the computer's CD-ROM drive.

3 Double-click the [Canon Digital Camera Installer] icon in the CD-ROM window.



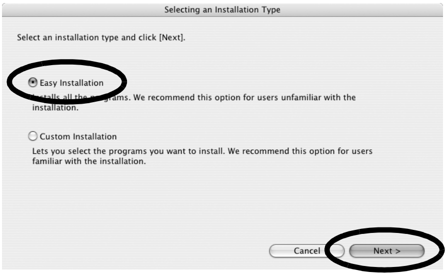
4 Click the Digital Camera Software [Install] button.



Installer Panel

5. **Select [Easy Installation] and click [Next].**

   Select [Custom Installation] to select programs individually for installation.


Selecting an Installation Type

Select an installation type and click [Next].

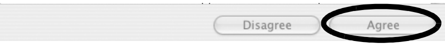
● Easy Installation

Installs all the programs. We recommend this option for users unfamiliar with the installation.

○ Custom Installation

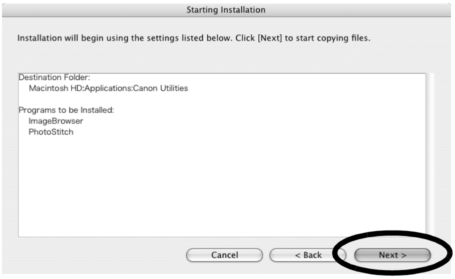
Lets you select the programs you want to install. We recommend this option for users familiar with the installation.

6. **Click [Agree] if you agree to all of the terms of the software license agreement.**



7. **Review the installation settings and click [Next].**

   Follow the onscreen instructions to proceed.

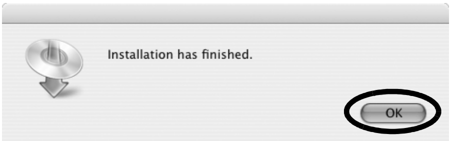

Starting Installation

Installation will begin using the settings listed below. Click [Next] to start copying files.

Destination Folder:
Macintosh HD:Applications:Canon Utilities

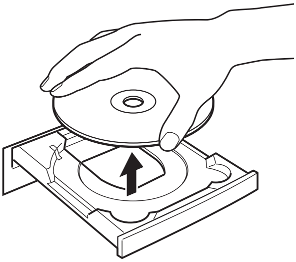
Programs to be Installed:
ImageBrowser
PhotoStitch

8. **When the installation is over, click [OK].**


Installation has finished.

9. **Click [Exit] in the installer panel and remove the disk from the CD-ROM drive.**

   This concludes the software installation.



See *Uninstalling the Software* (p. 84) to delete the software installed with these procedures.

Continue by downloading images to the computer (p. 52).

Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – The Basics

This chapter explains the procedures for using ImageBrowser to download the camera's images to the computer and print them.
Read this chapter after completing the preparations in the *Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – Preparations* section.

Downloading Images to the Computer

Begin by downloading the images to your computer. The downloading procedure is slightly different according to whether you are using a camera to computer connection (see below) or a memory card reader (p. 54).

You may not be able to download the camera images if there are more than approximately 1000 images in the camera. Use a memory card reader to download in that case.

Camera to Computer Connection

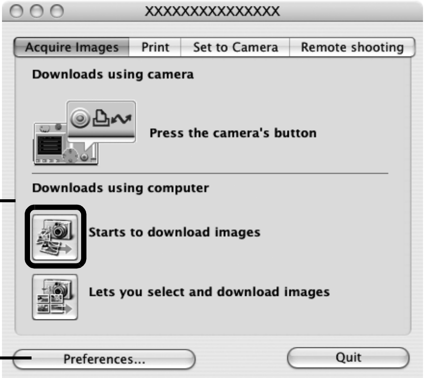
1 Attach the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and the camera's DIGITAL Terminal. Prepare the camera for communication with the computer.

Procedures for attaching the camera to the computer and placing it in the correct mode for connecting vary between camera models. See the *Camera User Guide*.

The Camera Control Window will appear.
If it does not open, click the [CameraWindow] icon in the Dock (the bar at the bottom of the desktop). To set whether this window automatically opens when you connect the camera to the computer, remove the check mark from the [Displays this screen when the camera is connected] in the [File] menu in the Camera Control window.

2 Download images.

Download the images using the camera or the computer. By default, the downloaded images are saved into the [Pictures] folder.


XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Downloads using camera
Press the camera's button
Downloads using computer
Starts to download images
Lets you select and download images
Preferences...
Quit

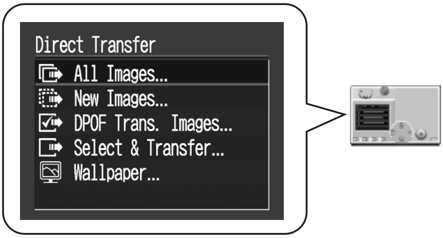
Camera Control Window

You can adjust the settings, such as the type of image downloaded and the destination folder, by clicking [Preferences].

Using the Camera to Download Images (Direct Transfer Function)

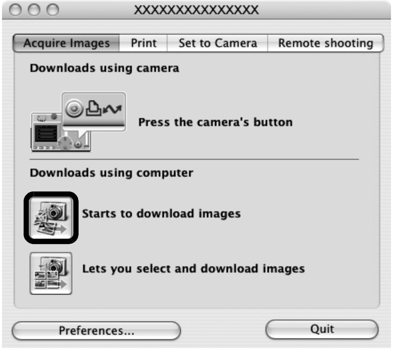
- If the conditions are right for the Direct Transfer function, the Direct Transfer settings menu will appear in the LCD monitor. In addition, the ⎙ (Print/Share) button will light if your camera is equipped with one.
- See the *Camera User Guide* for instructions regarding Direct Transfer settings and procedures.

Set the Direct Transfer settings on the camera and press the ⎙ (Print/Share) button or the [SET] button.


Direct Transfer
All Images...
New Images...
DPOF Trans. Images...
Select & Transfer...
Wallpaper...

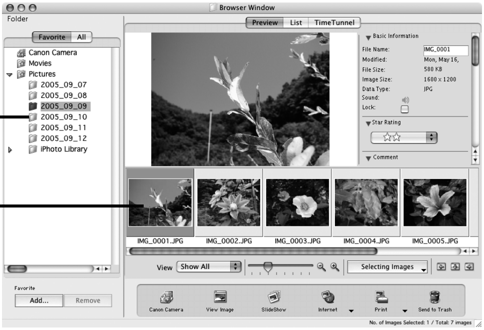
Using the Computer to Download Images

Click [Starts to download images].


XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Downloads using camera
Press the camera's button
Downloads using computer
Starts to download images
Lets you select and download images
Preferences...
Quit

- By default, all the images that have yet to be downloaded will download.
- To download images that have had their transfer settings set with the camera, click [Preferences] and select [Images whose transfer settings were specified with the camera] as the image type to be downloaded.
- Click [Lets you select and download images] to show the camera images in a list, check the images before downloading and download only selected images.

By default, when the download is complete, the thumbnails (tiny versions) of the downloaded images display in ImageBrowser's Browser Window.


Browser Window
Folder
Favorite
All
Canon Camera
Movies
Pictures
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
iPhoto Library
Preview
List
TimeTunnel
Basic Information
Star Rating
Comment
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
View
Show All
Selecting Images
Favorite
Add...
Remove
Canon Camera
View Image
SlideShow
Internet
Print
Send to Trash

File Name: IMG_0001
Modified: Mon, May 16,
File Size: 580 KB
Image Size: 1600 x 1200
Data Type: JPG
Sound:
Lock: ☐

No. of Images Selected: 1 / Total: 7 images

The downloaded symbol displays on downloaded folders (the symbol will disappear when you exit ImageBrowser).

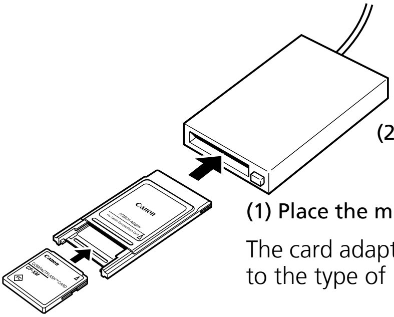
Thumbnail

Continue by printing out an image (p. 56).

Memory Card Reader Connection

1 **Insert the memory card into the reader.**

Use a separately sold card adapter if required.
See the manual for the memory card reader for details on how to connect and use the reader.


Canon
Canon

(2) Insert the loaded adapter into the slot.

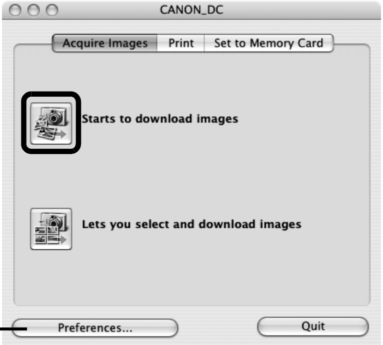
(1) Place the memory card in an adapter if required.

The card adapter and memory card shape may vary according to the type of memory card your camera utilizes.

The Camera Control Window will appear.

If it does not open, click the [CameraWindow] icon in the Dock (the bar at the bottom of the desktop). To set whether this window automatically opens when you connect the camera to the computer, remove the check mark from the [Displays this screen when the camera is connected] in the [File] menu in the Camera Control window.

2 Click [Starts to download images].



You can set the type of image to download and the destination folder by clicking [Preferences].

- By the default settings, all images are downloaded to the [Pictures] folder.
- To download images that have had their transfer settings set with the camera, click [Preferences] and select [Images whose transfer settings were specified with the camera] as the type of image for downloading.
- Click [Lets you select and download images] to show the memory card images in a list, check the images before downloading and download only selected images.
- See *Memory Card Folder Structure* (p. 87) for information about memory card folder structures and file names.

By default, when the download is complete, the thumbnails (tiny versions) of the downloaded images will display in ImageBrowser's Browser Window when downloading is complete.

Continue by printing out an image (p. 56).

Printing Images

There are three ways in which images may be printed: One Photo per page Print, Index Print and Layout Print. This section explains the Print 1 Image per Page and Arrange and Print sections.

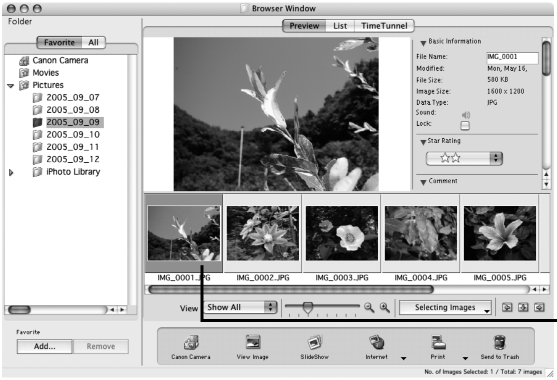
Movies cannot be printed, but you can print stills after they have been extracted from movies and saved to files.

One Photo per page Print

This option prints one image per page in a standard "photo" format. If you select multiple images, it will print them on the corresponding number of pages.

1 **Select the images to print.**

Clicking on an image selects it and displays a blue frame around it. To select multiple images, hold down the [shift] or [⌘] (command) key while clicking on images.

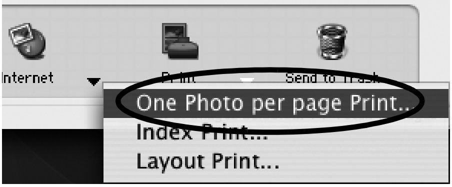

Browser Window
Folder
Favorite
All
Canon Camera
Movies
Pictures
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
iPhoto Library
Preview
List
TimeTunnel
Basic Information
Star Rating
Comment
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
View
Show All
Selecting Images
Favorite
Add...
Remove
Canon Camera
View Image
SlideShow
Internet
Print
Send to Trash

File Name: IMG_0001
Modified: Mon, May 16,
File Size: 580 KB
Image Size: 1600 x 1200
Data Type: JPG
Sound:
Lock: ☐

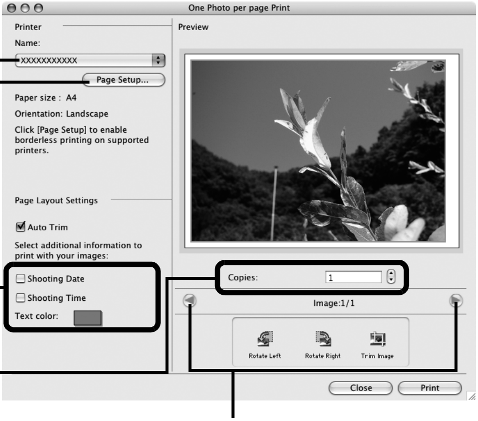
No. of Images Selected: 1 / Total: 7 images

A blue frame displays around selected images.

2 **Click [Print] and select [One Photo per page Print].**


Internet
Print
Send to Trash
One Photo per page Print...
Index Print...
Layout Print...

3 Set the categories as you feel necessary.


One Photo per page Print
Printer
Name:
XXXXXXXXXXX
Page Setup...
Preview
Page Layout Settings
☑ Auto Trim
☐ Shooting Date
☐ Shooting Time
Text color:
Copies:
1
Image:1/1
Rotate Left
Rotate Right
Trim Image
Close
Print

Paper size : A4
Orientation: Landscape
Click [Page Setup] to enable borderless printing on supported printers.

Select additional information to print with your images:

Selects a printer.

Selects options such as the paper size and orientation when you click [Page Setup].

Place a check mark here to print the shooting dates/times with the images.

Sets the number of copies printed.

Click this button to switch between images if you selected multiple images.

4 Click [Print].
The Print window will now open.

5 After setting the number of copies, and other settings, click [Print].

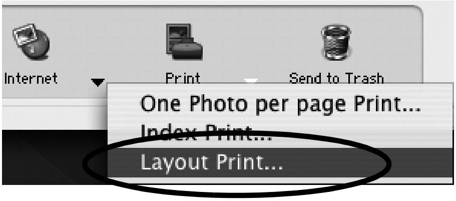
6 After the printing finishes, click ⊗ to close the window.

Layout Print

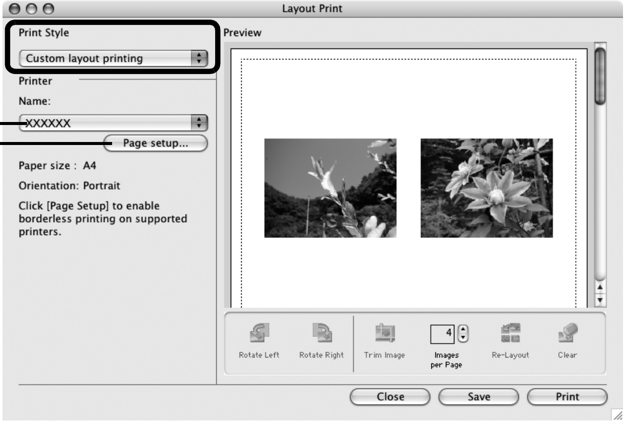
Allows you to arrange multiple images on a single page and print.

1 Select images for printing in the Browser Window.
Clicking on images selects them and changes the background to blue.
To select multiple images, hold the [shift] or [⌘] key down while clicking on images.

2 Click [Print] and select [Layout Print].


Internet
Print
Send to Trash
One Photo per page Print...
Index Print...
Layout Print...

3 **In the Print Style category, select [Custom layout printing] and set the categories as you feel necessary.**



Print Style: Custom layout printing

Printer

Name: XXXXXX

Page setup...

Paper size : A4

Orientation: Portrait

Click [Page Setup] to enable borderless printing on supported printers.

Selects a printer.

Selects options such as the paper size and orientation when you click [Page Setup].

4 **Change the layout or add text as you feel necessary in the Layout Print window.**

See *Layout Print Window Features* (p. 59) for an explanation of procedures for changing the layout or adding text.

5 **Click [Print].**

This will open the Print window.

6 **After setting the number of copies, and other settings, click [Print].**

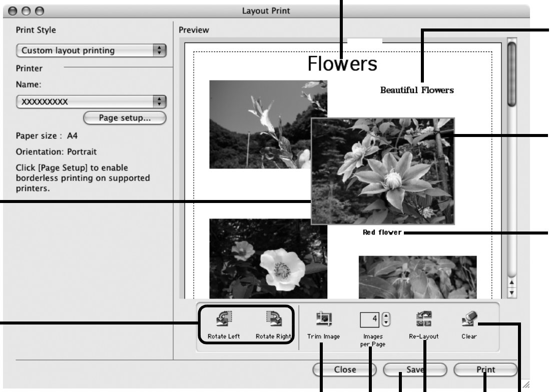
7 **After the printing finishes, click ⊗ to close the window.**

To save the layout, click [Save]. To proceed without saving, click [Don't Save]. When the save operation is complete, the original ImageBrowser window will be restored.

> You can print a contact sheet of the thumbnails or print the image shooting information if you click [Print] in the Browser Window and select [Index Printing].

Layout Print Window Features

When the [Custom layout printing] option is selected in the Layout Options window, you can freely change the size and position of the images for printing.


Layout Print
Print Style
Preview
Printer
Name:
Page setup...
Flowers
Beautiful Flowers
Red flower
Rotate Left
Rotate Right
Trim Image
4
Images per Page
Re-Layout
Clear
Close
Save
Print

Print Style: Custom layout printing

Printer Name: XXXXXXXXX

Paper size : A4

Orientation: Portrait

Click [Page Setup] to enable borderless printing on supported printers.

Edit the Page Title
Open the [Edit] menu and select [Edit Header].

Add Text
Open the [Edit] menu and select [Add Text].

Change the Layout
Drag the images to change the layout.

Change the Image Size
Drag the border to resize the image.

Add Captions to Images
Click the image and then the [Edit] menu and select [Edit Caption].

Rotate the selected image.

A part of the image is trimmed.

Change the default number of images printed per page.

Saves the layout.

Vertically and horizontally lines up images in the window.

Displays the Print dialog.

Deletes images from the Layout Print window.

To print the shooting date, shooting time or the file name as the caption, click the [ImageBrowser] menu and select [Preferences]. Select [Print] from the list box at the upper left of the Preferences window and place check marks besides the desired items in the [Items to Print in Caption] category.

This chapter explained the ImageBrowser basics.

Once you have mastered them, try the advanced techniques.
Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – Advanced Techniques (p. 60).

Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – Advanced Techniques

This chapter explains various ImageBrowser features.
Proceed to this chapter once you have mastered the basic ImageBrowser procedures in the *Using the Software on the Macintosh Platform – The Basics* chapter.

> To confirm whether your camera supports these functions, please refer to *Information about Your Camera* (p. 98).

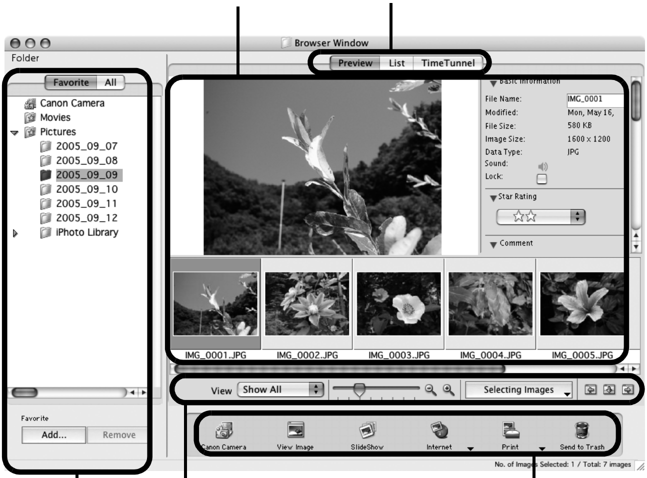
The ImageBrowser Windows

This section describes the principal ImageBrowser windows: the Browser Window, Viewer Window and File Information Window.

Browser Window

This window is for displaying and organizing images downloaded to the computer.

Browser Area (p. 61) Display Mode (p. 62)


Browser Window
Folder
Favorite
All
Canon Camera
Movies
Pictures
2005_09_07
2005_09_08
2005_09_09
2005_09_10
2005_09_11
2005_09_12
iPhoto Library
Favorite
Add...
Remove
Preview
List
TimeTunnel
Basic Information
Star Rating
Comment
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
View
Show All
Selecting Images
Canon Camera
View Image
SlideShow
Internet
Print
Send to Trash

File Name: IMG_0001
Modified: Mon, May 16,
File Size: 580 KB
Image Size: 1600 x 1200
Data Type: JPG
Sound:
Lock: ☐

No. of Images Selected: 1 / Total: 7 images

Explorer Panel (p. 61) Display Control Panel (p. 63) Control Panel (p. 63)

Explorer Panel

- Use this area to select folders. The images in the selected folder display in the Browser Area.
- If you selected Favorite Folders, only the folders registered in advance as Favorite Folders will display. You are recommended to register a folder that you use frequently as one of the Favorite Folders. If you selected All Folders, all the folders will display.

Methods for Registering a Favorite Folder

- If [Favorite Folders] is displayed: click [Add] and select a folder.
- If [All Folders] is displayed: select a folder and click [Add to Favorites].

Browser Area

- The images in the folder selected in the Explorer Panel will display here.
The display style will vary according to your Display Mode selection.

Methods for Selecting Images in the Browser Area

- Selecting a single image: click on an image.
- Selecting multiple images: click on the first image and then hold the [shift] or [⌘] (command) key down while clicking on additional images.
- Selecting consecutive images: click on the first image and then hold the [shift] and [option] keys down while clicking on the last image.

- The following types of icon will display around images according to their attributes.

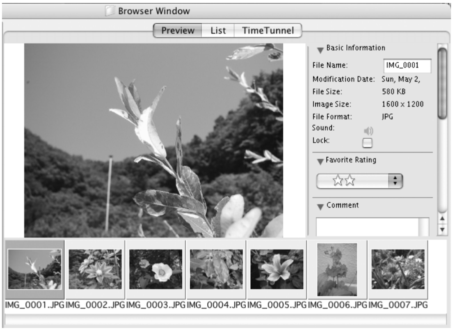
⧉	Images shot with the camera's Stitch Assist mode
RAW	RAW images
🎥	Movies
♪	Images with sound memo attachments
O-n	Protected images
▨	Images shot with the camera's AEB function
↻	Images shot with the camera on end that are rotated in the display only

Display Mode

- Selects the display style for the Browser Area.

Preview

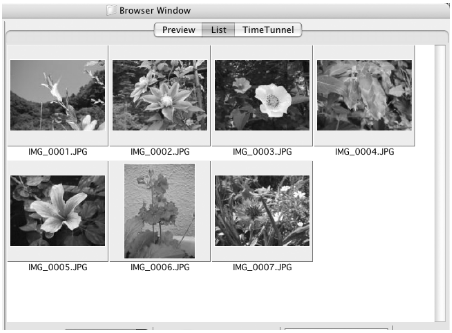
This mode displays the image at a larger size as well as the image information.


Browser Window
Preview
List
TimeTunnel
Basic Information
Favorite Rating
Comment
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
IMG_0006.JPG
IMG_0007.JPG

File Name: IMG_0001
Modification Date: Sun, May 2,
File Size: 580 KB
Image Size: 1600 x 1200
File Format: JPG
Sound:
Lock: ☐

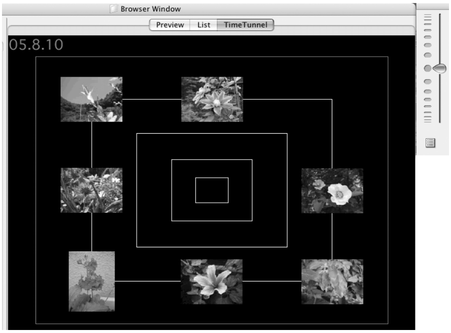
List

Displays the images in the folder selected in the Explorer Panel section in rows and columns.


Browser Window
Preview
List
TimeTunnel
IMG_0001.JPG
IMG_0002.JPG
IMG_0003.JPG
IMG_0004.JPG
IMG_0005.JPG
IMG_0006.JPG
IMG_0007.JPG

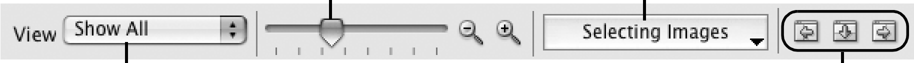
TimeTunnel

Displays images in chronological order in a simulated time tunnel. You can move along a timeline from the past to the present using the slider that appears at the window's right.


Browser Window
Preview
List
TimeTunnel
05.8.10

Display Control Panel

- This panel adjusts the display settings for the Browser Area.


View
Show All
Selecting Images

Display Size
Changes the size of the thumbnail in the Browser Area.

Selection Menu
Use this to select or deselect all the images in the Browser Area.

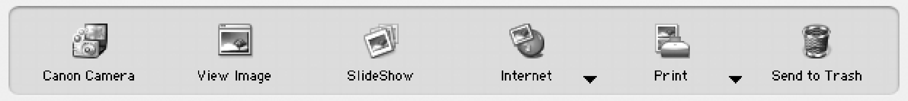
Filter Images
This feature filters your images by their Star Ratings, displaying only those images in the Browser Area.
One of three Star Ratings can be assigned to an image in the Viewer Window, the File Information Window, or in the information column in the Preview display mode.

Hide Buttons

Left:	Hides the Explorer Panel.
Middle:	Hides the control panel.
Right:	Hides the image information in the Preview display mode.

Control Panel

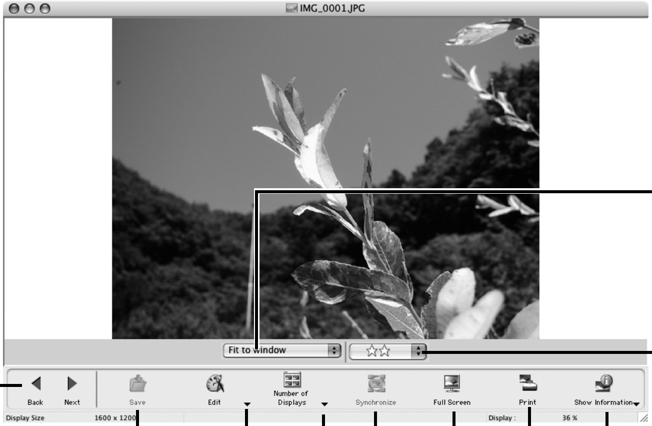
- The control panel contains buttons for executing various functions.


Canon Camera
View Image
SlideShow
Internet
Print
Send to Trash

The functions displayed here are explained in the *Control Panel Features* section (p. 66).

Viewer Window

Double-click an image in the Browser Area to display it in the Viewer Window.


IMG_0001.JPG
Fit to window
Back
Next
Save
Edit
Number of Displays
Synchronize
Full Screen
Print
Show Information
Display Size
1600 x 1200
Display :
36 %

Zoom
Changes the image zoom setting.

Star Ratings Menu
Sets the Star Rating for an image.

Image Selector Button
Switches between images.

Show Information Button
Displays the AF frame (focal point frame) and the shooting information.

Save Button
Saves the edited image.

Print Button
Prints the displayed image.

Edit Menu
You can edit, performing such things as cropping, adjusting colors and brightness, eliminating red eyes and inserting texts. You can also use it to start up other programs for editing.

Full Screen Button
Displays the image in the full screen mode. Click the image or press any key on the keyboard to restore the normal display mode.

Number of Displays Menu
Displays multiple images at once. This is handy for comparing images.

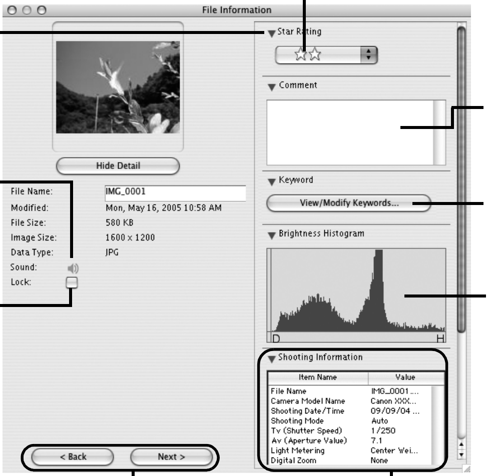
Synchronize Button
Synchronizes the display settings when multiple images are displayed.

- If a RAW image is displayed, the [Show Original Image] button displays beneath it. Clicking this button displays the converted image in the Viewer Window.
- If a movie file is displayed, the [Save as Still Image] button will display beside the Star Ratings.

File Information Window

The File Information Window displays when you select an image in the Browser Area, click the [File] menu and select [Get Info]. The File Information Window does not display in the Preview display mode.

Star Rating Menu
Sets the Star Rating for an image.


File Information
Star Rating
Comment
Keyword
View/Modify Keywords...
Brightness Histogram
D
H
Shooting Information
Hide Detail
< Back
Next >

File Name: IMG_0001
Modified: Mon, May 16, 2005 10:58 AM
File Size: 580 KB
Image Size: 1600 x 1200
Data Type: JPG
Sound:
Lock: ☐

Item Name	Value
File Name	IMG_0001 ....
Camera Model Name	Canon XXX...
Shooting Date/Time	09/09/04 ...
Shooting Mode	Auto
Tv (Shutter Speed)	1/250
Av (Aperture Value)	7.1
Light Metering	Center Wei...
Digital Zoom	None

Shows or hides categories.

Plays a sound memo attached to an image.

Lock
Prevents an image from being overwritten or deleted.

Comment
You can type a comment here.

Keyword
Sets the keywords used in searches.

Brightness Histogram
A graph of the highlights and shadows distribution in an image.

Image Selector Buttons
Switches between images.

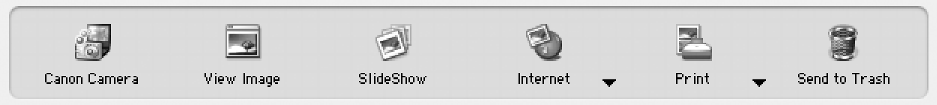
Shooting Information
Displays detailed information about the shooting settings when the image was captured, such as the shutter speed or exposure setting. The camera model will determine what information is displayed.

ImageBrowser Features

This section provides a brief introduction to ImageBrowser features.

To confirm whether your camera supports these functions, please refer to *Information about Your Camera* (p. 98).

Control Panel Features



Canon Camera

Opens the Camera Control Window, which lets you perform the following operations.

Acquire Images

Downloads images from the camera/memory card (pp. 52 – 54).
Additionally, you can download sound files recorded with the Sound Recorder function on the camera. Refer to the ImageBrowser Help for download instructions.

Print

Selects and prints the images in a camera or memory card. You can print numerous ways, using DPOF settings, the Index Print option, Full Page Print option, or by selecting images before printing.

Set to Camera

Sets camera settings, such as the My Camera settings (p. 77). It also uploads images from the computer to the camera/memory card.

Remote Shooting

Allows you to operate the camera shutter from the computer (p. 73).

View Image

Displays the selected image or movie in the Viewer Window.

SlideShow

Starts a slide show of the selected images. Click the [View] menu and select [Slide Show Options] to set the slide show settings.

Internet

Create Images for Email

Converts the selected images to the appropriate size for transmission by e-mail. You can also use it to automatically start an e-mail program after conversion.

Print

One Photo per page Print

Prints one image per page (p. 56).
You can print "photo" prints easily.

Index Print

Lines up small versions of the images in rows and prints.

Layout Print

Allows you to freely arrange multiple images on a single page and print. You can also insert captions and titles (p. 57).

Send to Trash

Sends the selected images or folders to the Trash.

Functions Selected from Menus

Search Images: [File] menu, [Search]

Searches for images based on such criteria as Star Ratings, dates, keywords, keywords or captions.

Export Images: [File] menu, [Export Images]

- Edit and Save: allows you to change the file type or size and export the file.
- Export Shooting Properties: allows you to export the shooting properties as a text file.
- Export as a Screensaver: Exports the image as a screen saver file.
- Export an Image as Wallpaper: Exports the image as a wallpaper file.

Organize Images: [File] menu, [Organize Image]

- Sort Images: sorts images according to criteria such as the shooting date or Star Rating and saves them into a specified folder.
- Rename: changes the files names of multiple images in a single pass.

Convert RAW Images: [File] menu, [RAW image processing]

Converts RAW images. You can adjust the image brightness, contrast and color balance among other attributes during conversion (p. 71).

Merge Panoramas: [Edit] menu, [PhotoStitch]

Merges multiple images and creates a single large panoramic image (p. 76).

Edit Movies: [Edit] menu, [Movie Edit]

Edits movies or still images strung together. You can add titles or background music and apply various effects (p. 70).

Extracting Stills from Movies: [Edit] menu, [Extract frames from a movie]

Extracts still images from movies over a specified interval and saves them as image files.

Display Settings: [View] menu, [View Settings]

Hides or shows image information beneath the thumbnail, such as the file name or the shooting date and time.

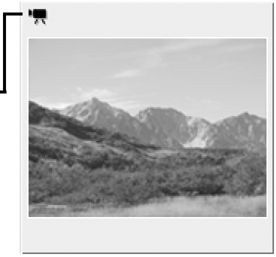
Sort Images: [View] menu, [Sort]

Arranges image order in the Browser Area according to criteria such as the filename, file modification date, file size or shooting date.

Replaying Movies

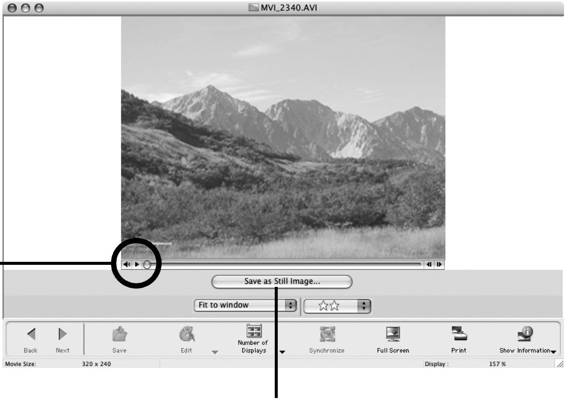
1 Double-click an image with a movie icon in ImageBrowser’s Browser Area.

The movie will appear in the Viewer Window.



Movie icon

2 Click the [Play] ▶ button.


MVI_2340.AVI
Save as Still Image...
Fit to window
☆☆
Back
Next
Save
Edit
Number of Displays
Synchronize
Full Screen
Print
Show Information

Movie Size: 320 x 240

Display : 157 %

You can control the movie's playback and sound volume.

You can save the displayed scene as a still image by clicking here.

Editing Movies

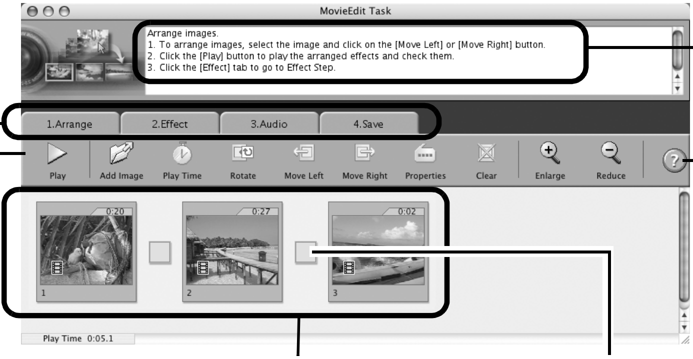
You can create and edit movies: link movies and stills that have been downloaded to your computer, add background music, superimpose titles and other text, and apply various effects to the movies.

1 **Select the image(s) to edit in ImageBrowser's Browser Area (movies or stills).**
You can select multiple movies or stills.

2 **Click the [Edit] menu and select [Movie Edit].**

3 **Follow the steps displayed in the middle of the window to edit the movie and save it.**

Follow these steps to proceed.


MovieEdit Task
1.Arrange
2.Effect
3.Audio
4.Save
Play
Add Image
Play Time
Rotate
Move Left
Move Right
Properties
Clear
Enlarge
Reduce
0:20
0:27
0:02
1
2
3
Play Time 0:05.1

Arrange images.
1. To arrange images, select the image and click on the [Move Left] or [Move Right] button.
2. Click the [Play] button to play the arranged effects and check them.
3. Click the [Effect] tab to go to Effect Step.

Instructions

Click this button for detailed operational instructions.

Click this button to play the movie being edited.

Storyboard Area
Displays thumbnails of the selected images.
Links images in order from left to right.

Transition Effect Box
Appears between adjacent images and displays the symbols of the transition effects linking images.

Converting RAW Images

RAW images are extremely high-quality images that are not subject to any deterioration due to compression processing. Since they are a special type of image, they cannot be opened by many image editing programs. It is first necessary to convert them into standard image files.

- See *Information about Your Camera* (p. 98) to determine whether your camera model supports this function.
- See the *Camera User Guide* for information about the camera settings for shooting RAW images.

Procedures for Converting RAW Images

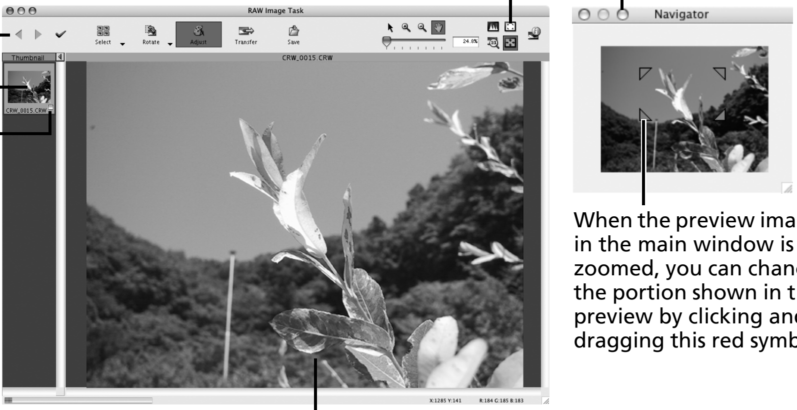
1 **Select a RAW image in ImageBrowser's Browser Area.**

2 **Click the [File] menu and select [RAW Image Processing].**

Click [OK] when a window displaying procedures for converting and adjusting RAW images appears.
The main window, the Navigator window and the Image Quality Adjustment Window will display.

You can switch between image and rotate images using the buttons in this section.

Click here if the navigator window is not open.

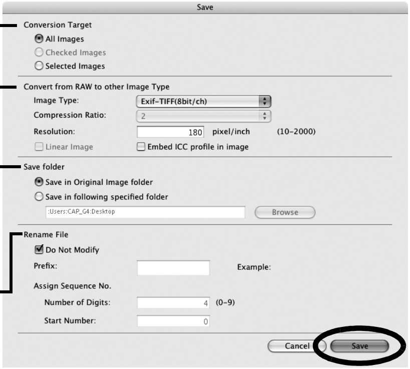


When the preview image in the main window is zoomed, you can change the portion shown in the preview by clicking and dragging this red symbol.

3 **Adjust the image quality as required in the Image Quality Adjustment Window.**

This window is explained in the *Functions of the Image Quality Adjustment Window* section.

4 Click (Save), set the file type and destination, and then click [Save].



Save

Conversion Target

- ● All Images
- ○ Checked Images
- ○ Selected Images

Convert from RAW to other Image Type

Image Type: Exif–TIFF(8bit/ch)

Compression Ratio: 2

Resolution: 180 pixel/inch (10–2000)

☐ Linear Image ☐ Embed ICC profile in image

Save folder

- ● Save in Original Image folder
- ○ Save in following specified folder

:Users:CAP_G4:Desktop

Rename File

☑ Do Not Modify

Prefix:

Example:

Assign Sequence No.

Number of Digits: 4 (0–9)

Start Number: 0

Selects the images for saving with these settings.

Select a file type

Set the file destination

You can also change the file name

This will convert the image.

5 Click in the Main Window.

Functions of the Image Quality Adjustment Window

The following adjustments can be made in the Image Quality Adjustment Window.
The available settings may vary depending on the camera used.

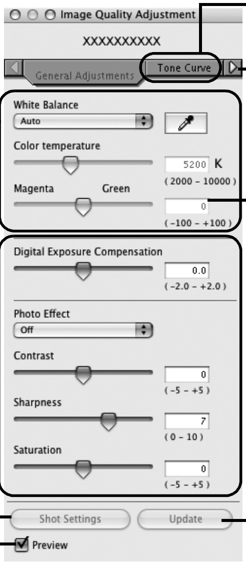


Image Quality Adjustment

XXXXXXXXXX

White Balance: Auto

Color temperature: 5200 K (2000 – 10000)

Magenta Green: 0 (–100 – +100)

Digital Exposure Compensation: 0.0 (–2.0 – +2.0)

Photo Effect: Off

Contrast: 0 (–5 – +5)

Sharpness: 7 (0 – 10)

Saturation: 0 (–5 – +5)

☑ Preview

This section adjusts the white balance according to the light source and color temperature.

This section adjusts the digital exposure compensation, photo effect, contrast, sharpness, and saturation.

Restores all settings to the settings stored in the camera at the time of shooting.

The effect of the settings above can be viewed immediately if you place a check mark here.

Tone Curve Tab
You can set the levels for the RGB channels separately or together.

Advanced Adjustments Tab
You can set the settings for adaptive noise control and the color space for the output. Click the arrow to display the tab.

If you cannot set the desired setting with the slider on the left, directly enter the setting here.

Applies the settings to the displayed image

You can change the coloration of the image to your preferred settings when you convert a RAW image. You can also select preset color schemes, such as Positive Film. Furthermore, you can add your own color schemes (My Color) to apply to other RAW images when they are being converted.

Operating the Shutter Remotely

You can record still images by using a computer to control the shutter of a connected camera. This is particularly useful for checking images on the larger display of the computer as you record them and for high volume photography without worrying about filling the camera's memory card.

Preparing for Remote Shooting

1 Attach the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and the camera's DIGITAL terminal and place the camera in the correct mode for connecting.

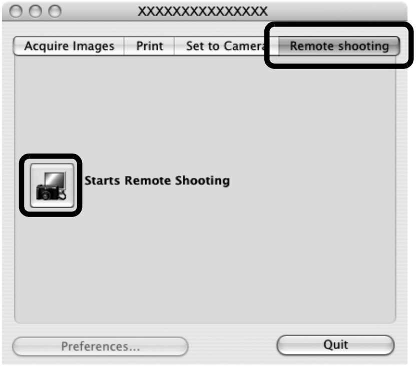
- Methods for connecting the camera to the computer and placing it in the correct mode for connecting vary between camera models. Please refer to the *Camera User Guide*.
- If the Camera Control Window does not automatically appear, click the [CameraWindow] icon in the Dock (the bar at the bottom of the desktop).

The Camera Control Window will display.

2 Open the lens cover or remove the lens cap on models equipped with them.

Proceed to the next step if your model does not have one.

3 Click the [Remote shooting] tab.

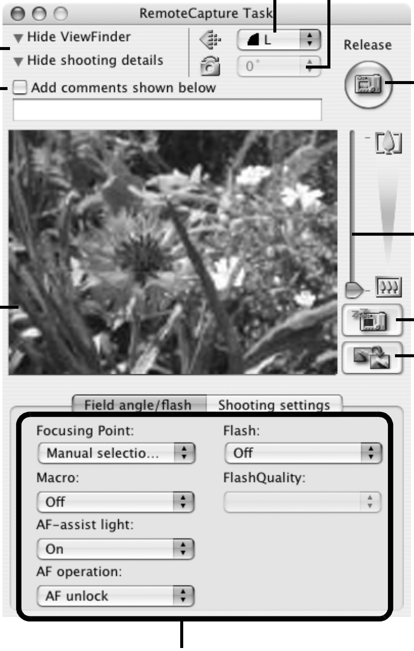


4 Click [Starts Remote Shooting].

5 Select a destination for the captured images and click [Choose].

RemoteCapture Task Window

The RemoteCapture Task window has the following features.



☐ Add comments shown below

Focusing Point: Manual selectio...

Flash: Off

Macro: Off

FlashQuality:

AF-assist light: On

AF operation: AF unlock

Shows/Hides the viewfinder or detailed settings area.

Size and Resolution Selector
Selects the size and resolution at which images are captured.

Rotation Settings
Sets the rotation parameters for images after they are captured.

You can add comments to images by placing a check mark here and typing text in the boxes below.

Release Button
Releases the shutter.

Slide this to zoom the camera in or out.

Viewfinder Display
Click the [Start/Stop Viewfinder] button while a connection to the camera is open to display the image appearing in the camera's viewfinder.

Start/Stop Viewfinder Button
Starts or stops the viewfinder display.

Refresh Button
Resets the exposure, focus and white balance.

Set the basic camera settings here.

- The settings available in the RemoteCapture Task window vary between camera models.
- RemoteCapture Task locks the exposure and focus settings for the subject matter in the Viewfinder section. If the lighting or distance to the subject changes, click to reset these settings.

Remote Shooting

Ensure that you turn off your computer’s sleep mode before you begin remote shooting. The device performance cannot be guaranteed if the computer enters the sleep mode.

1 Click and check the subject in the viewfinder.

2 Change the image size or resolution, the rotation settings and the settings at the bottom of the window as required.

If you intend to hold the camera vertically to photograph a subject, you can save the image to the computer with the correct orientation if you set the rotation settings in advance.

If your camera is equipped with the Auto Rotate function and you set it to On, the image will automatically be rotated and appear in the correct viewing orientation in the RemoteCapture Task window.

3 Click the [Release] button.

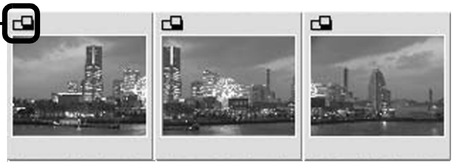
- You can release the shutter by pressing the camera’s shutter button or the keyboard’s space key.
- Other than the shutter button, the camera's buttons and switches, including the zoom, cannot be operated while the camera is being controlled with the Remote Shooting function.
- You may notice that the interval between the shutter release and activation is slightly longer for remote shooting than when the camera is used independently.

Merging Panoramic Images – PhotoStitch

You can create a wide panoramic image by merging several images. It is easier to merge images if they are shot with the camera's Stitch Assist mode because PhotoStitch can automatically detect the image order and orientation.

Images Shot in Stitch Assist Mode

A sequence of images shot in Stitch Assist mode is saved into a single folder when it is downloaded from the camera. In addition, the symbol below displays by the image in the Browser Area.



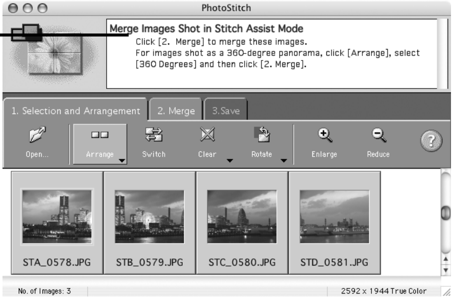
Symbol displayed by images shot in Stitch Assist mode.

- See the *Camera User Guide* for information about shooting in Stitch Assist mode.
- Images shot in Stitch Assist mode with a wide converter, teleconverter or close-up lens cannot be merged accurately.

Starting PhotoStitch

1 Select a series of images in the ImageBrowser's Browser Area.

2 Click the [Edit] menu and select [PhotoStitch].



Instructions

Merge Images Shot in Stitch Assist Mode

Click [2. Merge] to merge these images.
For images shot as a 360-degree panorama, click [Arrange], select [360 Degrees] and then click [2. Merge].

PhotoStitch
1. Selection and Arrangement
2. Merge
3.Save
Open...
Arrange
Switch
Clear
Rotate
Enlarge
Reduce
?
STA_0578.JPG
STB_0579.JPG
STC_0580.JPG
STD_0581.JPG
No. of Images: 3
2592 x 1944 True Color

3 Merge the images following the instructions in the guidance panel at the top of the PhotoStitch window.

Enjoy Customizing Your Camera with the My Camera Settings

The start-up image, start-up sound, shutter sound, operation sound, and self-timer sound are called the My Camera settings. You can add your favorite images and sounds from your computer to the My Camera settings. This topic explains how to upload the My Camera settings saved onto your computer to the camera and vice versa.

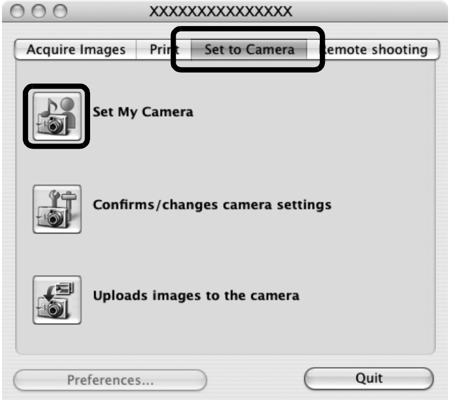
Displaying the My Camera Window

1 **Attach the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and the camera's DIGITAL terminal and place the camera in the correct mode for connecting.**

- Procedures for attaching the camera to the computer and placing it in the correct mode for connecting vary between camera models. See the *Camera User Guide*.
- If the Camera Control Window does not automatically appear, click the [CameraWindow] icon in the Dock (the bar at the bottom of the desktop).

The Camera Control Window will display.

2 **Click the [Set to Camera] tab.**


XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Acquire Images
Print
Set to Camera
Remote shooting
Set My Camera
Confirms/changes camera settings
Uploads images to the camera
Preferences...
Quit

3 **Click [Set My Camera].**
The My Camera window will display.

The My Camera Window

ImageBrowser already contains several pre-recorded My Camera settings items. You can check these items with the My Camera window.

Type
Select the settings type.

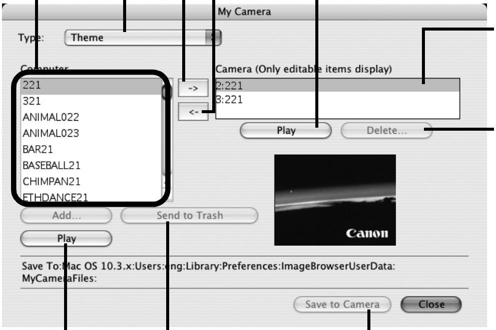
Displays the list of settings files saved onto the computer.

Save to Camera
Save to Computer

Play Button
Plays the audio from the settings file in the camera.

Displays the settings in the camera.

Delete Button
Deletes a settings file from the camera.



Type: Theme

221
321
ANIMAL022
ANIMAL023
BAR21
BASEBALL21
CHIMPAN21
ETHDANCE21

Camera (Only editable items display)

2:221
3:221

Save To:Mac OS 10.3.x:Users:eng:Library:Preferences:ImageBrowserUserData:MyCameraFiles:

Play Button
Plays the audio from the selected settings file.

Send to Trash Button
Deletes a settings file from the computer.

Save to Camera Button
Click here to save the settings onto the camera.

Saving the My Camera Settings to the Camera

- My Camera settings can be selected and saved in either of two ways to the camera: individually or in theme sets.
- The “Animal” theme, for example, features an animal in the start-up image and animal calls in each of the sound files. The names of the prepared files for the various My Camera settings themes all begin with the same root name. The start-up image and sound files in the "Animal" theme, for example, all begin with “Animal~”.

Do not detach the interface cable, turn the camera power off or disconnect the camera from the computer while the My Camera settings are being saved to the camera or the settings from the camera are being saved to the computer.

1 Select the type of setting in the Type list box that you wish to save to the camera.

2 Select the setting from the Computer list that you would like to add.

3 Select the setting in the Camera list that you would like to change and click the -> button.

The Camera list setting will change to the selected file. If a setting for this category has previously been saved to the camera, it will be overwritten.
Repeat steps 1–3 as required.

4 Click the [Save to Camera] button.

This concludes the process of saving the My Camera settings to the camera.
To use this data on the camera, change the start-up image and sound settings on the camera itself. Please see the *Camera User Guide* for these instructions.

Saving the Camera’s My Camera Settings to the Computer

1 Select the type of setting you wish to save to the computer from the Type list box.

2 Select the setting in the Camera list that you wish to save to the computer.

3 Click the <- button.

4 Input a file name to the selected setting and click the [OK] button.

This concludes the process of saving the My Camera settings to the computer.
Repeat steps 1–4 as required.

Adding New Data to the My Camera Window

Create a new image or sound file and add it to the My Camera window.
- Adding Image and Sound Files After Creating Them

Create an Original Start-up Image File and then Add It

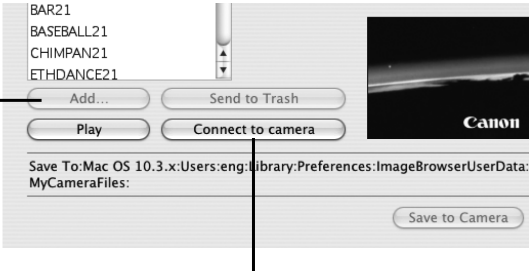
Start by using an image editing program to create the image file that will become the start-up image and save it to the computer. Create a JPEG image at a size of (w) 320 x (h) 240 pixels.

1 Click the [File] menu in the ImageBrowser Main Window and select [Manage My Camera].

The My Camera window will display.

2 Select the [Start-up Image] in Type.

3 Click [Add].



Save To:Mac OS 10.3.x:Users:eng:Library:Preferences:ImageBrowserUserData:MyCameraFiles:

Add Button
Adds images and sound files for use as settings files. Added files display in the list.

Connect to Camera Button
Connects to the camera.

4 Select the file you created and click [Open].

This concludes the process for adding new data.

5 To connect to the camera, click [Connect to Camera].

You can add the settings files you just added to the computer to the camera using the same procedures as in *Saving the My Camera Settings to the Camera* (p. 79).

Add an Original Sound File

Change the file to a WAV sound file after you have copied the sound file to the computer. Then proceed with the steps as described in *Create an Original Start-up Image File and then Add It*.

- Use settings like those below when creating an image file for the start-up image with an image editing program.
  Compression Method : JPEG (Baseline JPEG)
  Sampling Rate : 4:2:0 or 4:2:2
  Image Size (w x h) : 320 x 240 pixels
- Use settings like those below when creating a sound file with a sound recording program.
  Compression Method : WAV (Monaural)
  Quantifying Bits : 8 bit
  Sampling Frequency : 11.025 kHz or 8.000 kHz

Use the following lengths as guidelines for the length of sound file that can be saved to the camera.

Type	Duration in Seconds	
	11.025 kHz	8.000 kHz
Start-Up Sound	1.0 sec. or less	1.3 sec. or less
Shutter Sound	0.3 sec. or less	0.4 sec. or less
Operation Sound	0.3 sec. or less	0.4 sec. or less
Self-Timer Sound	2.0 sec. or less	2.0 sec. or less

Appendices

This chapter introduces the CD-ROM supplied with your camera and the procedures for installing the programs. It also explains how to uninstall the programs.
Read the *Troubleshooting* section in this chapter if you experience a problem using the programs.

ArcSoft PhotoStudio

ArcSoft PhotoStudio is a high-performance yet easy-to-use image editing program from ArcSoft, Inc. It can process, edit and print images. It includes color corrections, brightness adjustments and special effects. Install it from the supplied CD-ROM, the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk, as required.

Installing ArcSoft PhotoStudio

Windows

1. **Close all programs that are running.**
2. **Place the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk in the CD-ROM drive.**
   If the installer panel displays, click [Exit] to close it.
3. **Click the [Start] menu, and select [My Computer].**
   Windows 2000, Windows Me and Windows 98 SE users, double-click the [My Computer] icon on the desktop.
4. **Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select [Open].**
5. **Double-click the [ARCSOFT] folder or right-click it and select [Open], and double-click the [SETUP.EXE] icon .**
   Follow the onscreen messages to proceed with the installation.

Macintosh

1. **Close all programs that are running.**
2. **Place the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk in the CD-ROM drive.**
3. **Open the CD-ROM and double-click [ARCSOFT], followed by the [PhotoStudio Installer] icon .**
   Follow the onscreen messages to proceed with the installation.
4. **Click [OK] when a message appears stating that the installation is complete.**

Starting ArcSoft PhotoStudio

You can start ArcSoft PhotoStudio from within ZoomBrowser EX (Windows) or ImageBrowser (Macintosh).

ZoomBrowser EX

1. Click [Edit] in the Task Area of the Main Window, followed by [Edit Image].
2. Confirm that [1. Select Images] is selected and select an image to edit.
3. Click [2. Select Editing Tool] and select [Edit with external image editor].
4. Select ArcSoft PhotoStudio from the program list and click [3. Finish].

If you cannot select ArcSoft PhotoStudio, register the program using the following procedures.

1. In Step 3 above, select [Edit with external image editor] and click [Manage List].
2. Click [Add] and select [ArcSoft PhotoStudio].

ImageBrowser

1. Select an image to edit, click the [Edit] menu and select [ArcSoft PhotoStudio].

Manual for ArcSoft PhotoStudio

You can obtain the ArcSoft PhotoStudio manual from the ArcSoft, Inc., website. Use your browser program to download the manual from the following URL:
http://www.arcsoft.com/support

Uninstalling the Software

The procedures for uninstalling the software are only required when you wish to delete the programs from your computer or when reinstallation is required to fix corrupted files.

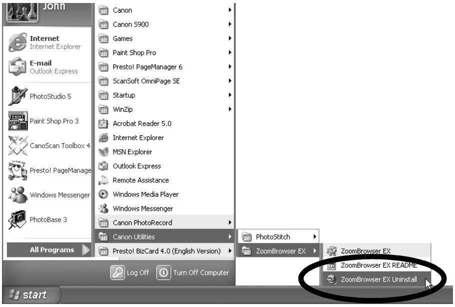
Uninstalling the Software (Windows)

Software Installed from the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk (excluding ArcSoft PhotoStudio)

This explanation uses ZoomBrowser EX to demonstrate how to uninstall a program.

1 Click the Windows [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [ZoomBrowser EX] and [ZoomBrowser EX Uninstall].

The uninstall utility will start and remove ZoomBrowser EX.


John
Internet
Internet Explorer
E-mail
Outlook Express
PhotoStudio 5
Paint Shop Pro 3
CanoScan Toolbox 4
Presto! PageManage
Windows Messenger
PhotoBase 3
All Programs
Canon
Canon S900
Games
Paint Shop Pro
Presto! PageManager 6
ScanSoft OmniPage SE
Startup
WinZip
Acrobat Reader 5.0
Internet Explorer
MSN Explorer
Outlook Express
Remote Assistance
Windows Media Player
Windows Messenger
Canon PhotoRecord
Canon Utilities
Presto! BizCard 4.0 (English Version)
PhotoStitch
ZoomBrowser EX
ZoomBrowser EX
ZoomBrowser EX README
ZoomBrowser EX Uninstall
Log Off
Turn Off Computer
start

- You can remove other programs with the same procedures.
- To uninstall CameraWindow, be sure to follow the following procedures.
  1. Click the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [CameraWindow], [PowerShot - IXY-IXUS - DVx] and [CameraWindow DC_DVx Uninstall].
     The "x" stands for a number. If more than one exists, delete all copies of the program before proceeding to Step 2.
  2. Click the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [CameraWindow], [EOS Digital] and [CameraWindow Uninstall].
  3. Click the [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [CameraWindow] and [CameraWindow Uninstall].
- PhotoRecord can be uninstalled by clicking the Windows [Start] menu and selecting [Programs] or [All Programs], followed by [Canon PhotoRecord] and [PhotoRecord Uninstall].

Uninstalling ArcSoft PhotoStudio

ArcSoft Camera Suite 2.1, ArcSoft Camera Suite 1.3

- Uninstall the program by clicking the [Start] menu and selecting [Control Panel] and [Add or Remove Programs].
- With Windows 2000/Me/98, uninstall the program by clicking the [Start] menu and selecting [Settings] followed by [Control Panel] and [Add/Remove Programs].

Uninstalling the USB Driver (Windows)

Uninstall the USB Driver using the following procedures if you are using Windows 2000, Windows Me or Windows 98 SE.

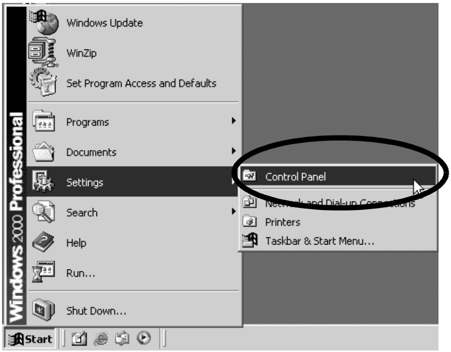
It is essential to note that you will not be able to download images if you uninstall the USB driver.

You do not need to uninstall the USB driver with Windows XP.

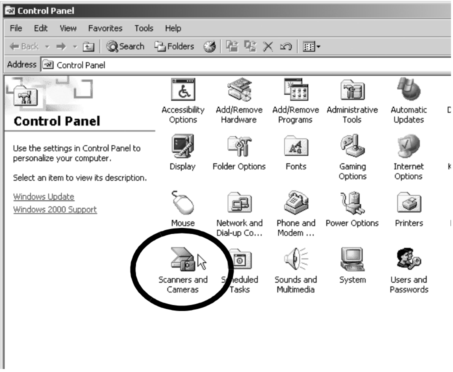
1. **Attach the supplied interface cable to the computer's USB port and the camera's DIGITAL Terminal. Prepare the camera for communication with the computer.**
   For interface cable connection instructions, see the *Camera User Guide*.

2. **Click the [Finish] button if the Camera Control Window displays.**

3. **Click the [Start] menu and select [Settings], followed by [Control Panel].**


Windows 2000 Professional
Windows Update
WinZip
Set Program Access and Defaults
Programs
Documents
Settings
Search
Help
Run...
Shut Down...
Start
Control Panel
Network and Dial-up Connections
Printers
Taskbar & Start Menu...

4. **Double-click the [Scanners and Cameras] icon or folder.**


Control Panel
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Folders
Address Control Panel
Control Panel

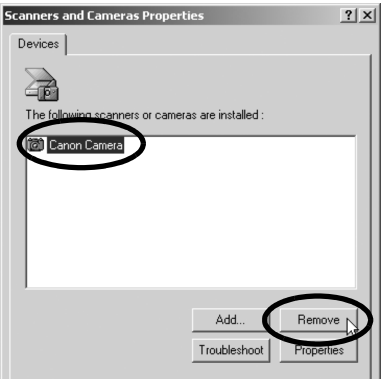
Use the settings in Control Panel to personalize your computer.

Select an item to view its description.

Windows Update
Windows 2000 Support
Accessibility Options
Add/Remove Hardware
Add/Remove Programs
Administrative Tools
Automatic Updates
Display
Folder Options
Fonts
Gaming Options
Internet Options
Mouse
Network and Dial-up Co...
Phone and Modem ...
Power Options
Printers
Scanners and Cameras
Scheduled Tasks
Sounds and Multimedia
System
Users and Passwords

5 **Delete your camera model name or [Canon Camera] in the [Scanners and Cameras Properties] dialog.**

Windows Me users should delete their camera model or [Canon Camera] in the [Scanners and Cameras] folder.


Scanners and Cameras Properties
Devices
The following scanners or cameras are installed :
Canon Camera
Add...
Remove
Troubleshoot
Properties

Windows 2000
Select your camera model name or [Canon Camera] and click [Remove].

Windows Me
Select your camera model name or [Canon Camera], right-click the mouse and select [Delete].

Windows 98 SE
Select your camera model name or [Canon Camera] and click [Remove]. Then turn off the camera and remove the interface cable from the computer's USB port.

> If your camera model name does not appear here, see the *Camera not detected, Events dialog won’t display or images will not download to the computer* (p. 90) of the *Troubleshooting* section.

6 **Click the Windows [Start] menu and select [All Programs] or [Programs], followed by [Canon Utilities], [Camera TWAIN Driver x.x] and [Uninstall TWAIN Driver]. A version number appears in place of the “x.x”.**

- Windows 2000, Windows 98 SE: Perform Step 6 with no substitutions.
- Windows Me: Substitute the following for the underlined portions of Step 6.
  [Camera WIA Driver x.x], [Uninstall WIA Driver]

The uninstall process will start.

To connect the camera to the computer and download after this point, use the following procedures.
1. Reinstall the driver.
2. Connect the camera to the computer with the interface cable.

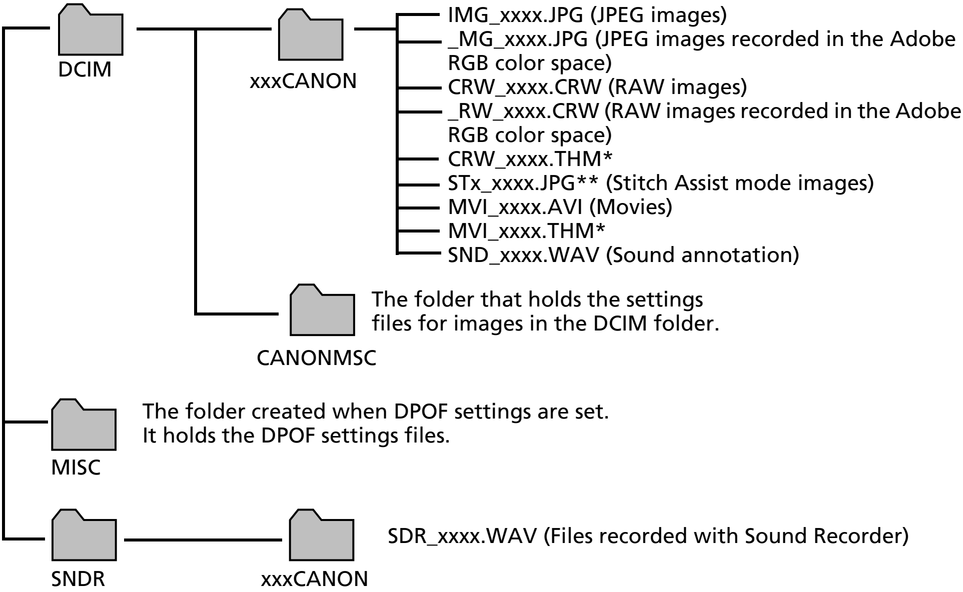
Uninstalling the Software (Macintosh)

Uninstall the programs by dragging the application’s folder (the folder in which it was installed) into the Trash, and then empty the Trash.

> Please be careful not to accidentally delete any folders with downloaded images that may be contained within the application folder.

Memory Card Folder Structure

The images on a memory card are placed in the [DCIM] folder in subfolders labeled [xxxCANON], where the “xxx” represents a number in the range 100 - 998.


DCIM
xxxCANON
IMG_xxxx.JPG (JPEG images)
_MG_xxxx.JPG (JPEG images recorded in the Adobe RGB color space)
CRW_xxxx.CRW (RAW images)
_RW_xxxx.CRW (RAW images recorded in the Adobe RGB color space)
CRW_xxxx.THM*
STx_xxxx.JPG** (Stitch Assist mode images)
MVI_xxxx.AVI (Movies)
MVI_xxxx.THM*
SND_xxxx.WAV (Sound annotation)
CANONMSC
The folder that holds the settings files for images in the DCIM folder.
MISC
The folder created when DPOF settings are set. It holds the DPOF settings files.
SNDR
xxxCANON
SDR_xxxx.WAV (Files recorded with Sound Recorder)

- * Files with the THM extension are the thumbnail image files for the camera’s index replay mode.
- The “xxxx” in file names represent four-digit numbers.
- ** Each successive file shot in Stitch Assist mode is assigned a letter starting from “A,” which is inserted as the third digit in the name. i.e. [STA_0001.JPG], [STB_0002.JPG], [STC_0003.JPG]...
- All folders except the “xxxCANON” folders contain image settings files. Do not open or delete them.

Method for Downloading to a Computer without Additional Software

This explains the method for downloading images to a computer without installing ZoomBrowser EX/ImageBrowser.

Windows XP (Installation of USB Driver Not Required)

Your camera uses a standard image transfer protocol called Picture Transfer Protocol (PTP). With PTP and Windows XP, all you need do is connect the camera to the computer with an interface cable to easily download images using the Scanners and Cameras Wizard or other procedures. However, there are some inconveniences and limitations to this downloading method. See the *For Windows® XP and Mac OS X Users* leaflet for details.

Windows Me (with the USB driver installed)

Easily download images using the Scanners and Cameras Wizard or Windows Explorer. All you need do is connect the camera to the computer with an interface cable.

See the Windows Help system for information about the Scanners and Cameras Wizard and Windows Explorer.

Troubleshooting

Please read this section if you encounter a problem using the software.

Start by Checking This

Investigate the following points first if you encounter a problem.

Does your computer satisfy the requirements listed in the *System Requirements* section (p. 8)?

Is the camera correctly connected to the computer?

See the *Camera User Guide* for the correct connection procedures. Also check to ensure that you are using the correct cable and that it is securely attached at both ends.

Is the camera set to the playback mode? (some models only)

Some models require the camera to be set to the playback mode to transfer data. See the *Camera User Guide* for details.

Is the battery sufficiently charged?

Check the battery charge if you are powering the camera with a battery. You are recommended to use a household power source (AC adapter) to power the camera when it is connected to a computer (if available for your camera model).

Problems

Try the suggested solutions to the common problems listed below.

USB driver installation not proceeding well (Windows)

Uninstall the driver (p. 85) before reinstalling it with the procedures in *Installing the Software and USB Driver* (p. 11).

Add New Hardware Wizard or New Hardware Found (Windows 2000) Wizard displays when the camera is connected to the computer with an interface cable.

Click [Cancel] to close the window. Temporarily disconnect the camera from the computer. Next, read *Start by Checking This* on the previous page and resolve the problem.

Images won't download into a TWAIN-compliant program (Camera and computer connected via interface cable (Windows 2000, Windows 98 SE)).

Click the [Finish] button in the Camera Control Window to close it.

Cannot download images or shoot remotely. (For cameras connected to the computer via an interface cable: only cameras supporting Hi-Speed USB 2.0).

The problem may be resolved by lowering the transmission speed for data by following the procedures below.

Solution:
Hold the **MENU** button on the camera down and press the ⎙ (Print/Share) button and **FUNC./SET** button simultaneously. In the displayed screen, select [B] and press the **FUNC./SET** button.

Camera not detected, Events dialog won't display or images will not download to the computer (when camera is connected to the computer via an interface cable).

Cause 1:

There is a problem with one of the items in the *Start by Checking This* section (p. 89).

Solution:
Resolve the problem.

Cause 2:

The USB driver is not installed (Windows only).

Solution:

Install it with the procedures in *Installing the Software and USB Driver* (p. 10).

Cause 3:

The USB driver is not correctly installed (Windows only).

Solution:

Uninstall the driver (p. 85) before reinstalling it with the procedures in *Installing the Software and USB Driver* (p. 11).

Cause 4:

The camera may have been recognized as another device under the following circumstances (Windows only).

- The camera was connected to the computer before the USB driver was installed.
- The [Scanners and Cameras] icon or the [Scanners and Cameras] folder cannot be found in the [Control Panel] or the [Printers and Other Hardware] window.
- Your camera model name, [Canon Camera] or a camera icon does not display in the [Scanners and Cameras Properties] dialog or the [Scanners and Cameras] folder.

Solution 1:

Start with the following procedures.
Install the USB driver with the procedures in *Installing the Software and USB Driver* (p. 11). Then connect the camera to the computer with the interface cable and prepare it to transfer data. If the USB driver is already installed, uninstall it first and then reinstall it.

Solution 2:

If the problem is not resolved with the procedures in Solution 1, continue by implementing the following procedures. The specific steps are explained below.

1. Check to see if the camera is being recognized as an “other” device.
2. Delete the driver and the setup information files if it is being recognized as an “other” device.
3. Reinstall the driver.

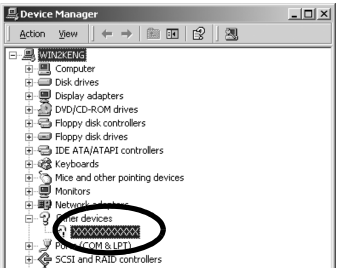
This section explains the specific steps for each operating system.

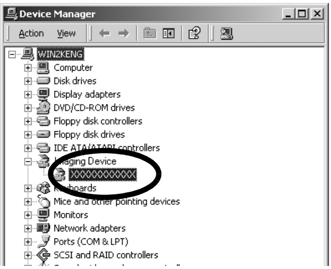
Windows XP and Windows 2000

Users of Windows XP and Windows 2000 must first log in as an Administrator (computer system administrator) to delete a driver.

Check to see if the camera is being recognized as an "other" device and delete the driver if it is.

1. **Windows XP:** Click the [Start] menu, followed by [Control Panel], [Performance and Maintenance] and [System].
   Windows 2000: Click the [Start] menu and select [Settings] and [Control Panel]. Double-click the [System] icon.
2. Click the [Hardware] tab, followed by [Device Manager].
3. Click the ⊞ symbol beside the [Other devices] and/or [Imaging devices] category. Your camera model name or [Canon Camera] will display in these categories if it is being recognized as an "other" device.


Device Manager
Action View
WIN2KENG
Computer
Disk drives
Display adapters
DVD/CD-ROM drives
Floppy disk controllers
Floppy disk drives
IDE ATA/ATAPI controllers
Keyboards
Mice and other pointing devices
Monitors
Network adapters
Other devices
XXXXXXXXXXX
Ports (COM & LPT)
SCSI and RAID controllers


Device Manager
Action View
WIN2KENG
Computer
Disk drives
Display adapters
DVD/CD-ROM drives
Floppy disk controllers
Floppy disk drives
IDE ATA/ATAPI controllers
Imaging Device
XXXXXXXXXXX
Keyboards
Mice and other pointing devices
Monitors
Network adapters
Ports (COM & LPT)
SCSI and RAID controllers

There are other potential reasons for the problem if the "Other devices" or "Imaging devices" categories do not appear or your camera model name or [Canon Camera] does not appear. Proceed to Step 6, temporarily quit the procedures and investigate the other potential causes.

4. Select your camera model name or [Canon Camera], right-click and select [Delete].
5. Click [OK] in the confirmation dialog.
   Delete all instances of your camera model name or [Canon Camera] if it appears in one or more places in the [Other devices] or [Imaging devices] categories.
6. Close the System Properties window.

Step 7 and above are not required for Windows XP.

Delete the setup information files

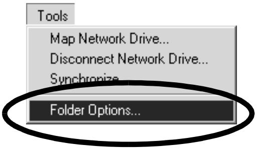
7. Double-click the [My Computer] icon on the desktop, followed by the [C:] drive, [WINNT] folder and [inf] folder.

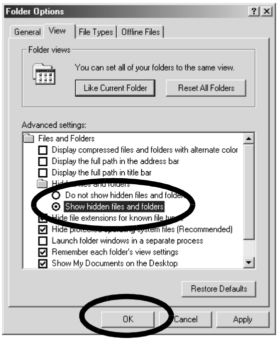
If the [inf] Folder Is Not Visible in the [WINNT] Folder

Use the following procedures to show all files and folders.

1. Open the [WINNT] folder.
2. Click the [Tools] menu and select [Folder Options].
3. Click the [View] tab.
4. In the [Files and Folders] category in the Advanced Settings section, set [Hidden files and folders] to [Show hidden files and folders]. Remove the check marks from [Hide file extensions for known file types] if it is present.
5. Click [OK] to close the dialog.

This will make the hidden files and folders visible.


Tools
Map Network Drive...
Disconnect Network Drive...
Synchronize...
Folder Options...


Folder Options
General
View
File Types
Offline Files
Folder views
Like Current Folder
Reset All Folders
Restore Defaults
OK
Cancel
Apply

You can set all of your folders to the same view.

Advanced settings:

- Files and Folders
  - ☐ Display compressed files and folders with alternate color
  - ☐ Display the full path in the address bar
  - ☐ Display the full path in title bar
  - Hidden files and folders
    - ○ Do not show hidden files and folders
    - ● Show hidden files and folders
  - ☑ Hide file extensions for known file types
  - ☑ Hide protected operating system files (Recommended)
  - ☐ Launch folder windows in a separate process
  - ☑ Remember each folder's view settings
  - ☑ Show My Documents on the Desktop

8. Look for files for Canon digital cameras that start with [CAP*].
   The "*" represents a number, such as 0 or 1.
   [CAP*] files come in pairs of [CAP*.inf] and [CAP*.pnf] files (For example, [CAP0.inf] and [CAP0.pnf]).
9. Double-click the [CAP*] files to check their contents.
   Double-clicking a [CAP*.inf] file will open it in the Windows Notepad program. Look for [;****Canon Camera Driver Setup File****] in the first line. Note down the names of these files.

Several sets of [CAP*] files may be present in the [inf] folder. Open up each file to confirm that it is an [CAP*] file for Canon digital cameras before you do anything with the file.

10. Delete the [CAP*] file set.
    Delete the [CAP*.inf] and [CAP*.pnf] file for Canon digital cameras that you noted down in Step 9.

The [inf] folder contains numerous files critical to the computer's operation. Be extremely careful to delete the correct files. If you delete the wrong files, you may be unable to restart Windows.

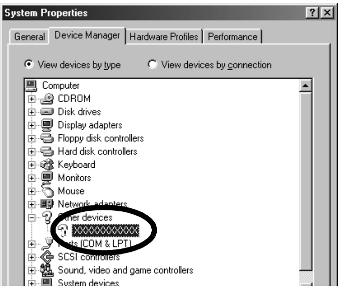
Reinstall the driver.

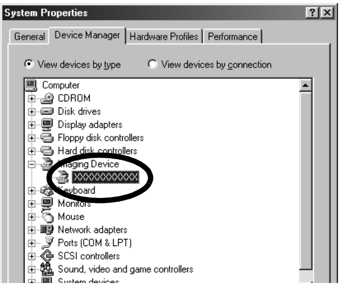
11. Reinstall the driver with the procedures in *Installing the Software and USB Driver* (p. 11).

Windows Me/Windows 98 SE

Check to see if the camera is being recognized as an "other" device and delete the driver if it is.

1. Click the [Start] menu and select [Settings], followed by [Control Panel]. Double-click the [System] icon.
   This will display the System Properties window.
2. Click the [Device Manager] tab.
3. Click the ⊞ symbol beside the [Other devices] and/or [Imaging devices] category. Your camera model name or [Canon Camera] will display in these categories if it is being recognized as an "other" device.


System Properties
General
Device Manager
Hardware Profiles
Performance
● View devices by type
○ View devices by connection
Computer
CDROM
Disk drives
Display adapters
Floppy disk controllers
Hard disk controllers
Keyboard
Monitors
Mouse
Network adapters
ner devices
XXXXXXXXXXX
ts (COM & LPT)
SCSI controllers
Sound, video and game controllers
System devices


System Properties
General
Device Manager
Hardware Profiles
Performance
● View devices by type
○ View devices by connection
Computer
CDROM
Disk drives
Display adapters
Floppy disk controllers
Hard disk controllers
aging Device
XXXXXXXXXXX
eyboard
Monitors
Mouse
Network adapters
Ports (COM & LPT)
SCSI controllers
Sound, video and game controllers

There are other potential reasons for the problem if the "Other devices" or "Imaging devices" categories do not appear or your camera model name or [Canon Camera] does not appear. Proceed to Step 6, temporarily quit the procedures and investigate the other potential causes.

4. Select your camera model name or [Canon Camera] and click [Remove].
5. Click [OK] in the confirmation dialog.
   Delete all instances of your camera model name or [Canon Camera] if it appears in one or more places in the [Other devices] or [Imaging devices] categories.
6. Click [OK] to close the System Properties window.

Delete the setup information files.

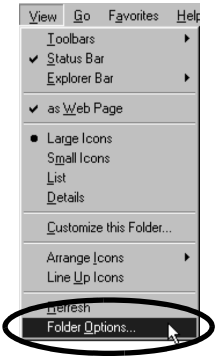
7. Double-click the [My Computer] icon on the desktop, followed by the [C:] drive, [WINDOWS] or [Windows] folder and [INF] or [Inf] folder.

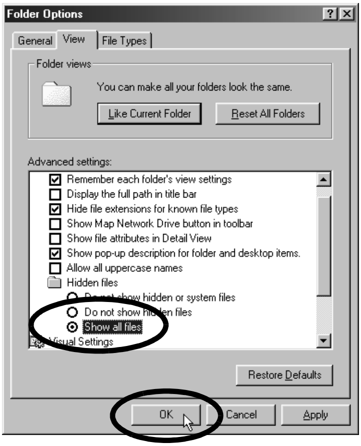
If the [INF] Folder Is Not Visible in the [WINDOWS] Folder

Use the following procedures to show all files and folders.

1. Windows 98 SE: Click the [View] menu and select [Folder Options].
   Windows Me: Click the [Tools] menu and select [Folder Options].
2. Click the [View] tab.
3. Windows 98 SE: Set the [Hide files] section to [Show all files].
   Windows Me: Set the [Hidden files and folders] section to [Show hidden files and folders].
4. Click [OK] to close the dialog.

This will make the hidden files and folders visible.


View
Go
Favorites
Help
Toolbars
Status Bar
Explorer Bar
as Web Page
Large Icons
Small Icons
List
Details
Customize this Folder...
Arrange Icons
Line Up Icons
Refresh
Folder Options...


Folder Options
General
View
File Types
Folder views
You can make all your folders look the same.
Like Current Folder
Reset All Folders
Advanced settings:
Restore Defaults
OK
Cancel
Apply

☑ Remember each folder's view settings
☐ Display the full path in title bar
☑ Hide file extensions for known file types
☐ Show Map Network Drive button in toolbar
☐ Show file attributes in Detail View
☑ Show pop-up description for folder and desktop items.
☐ Allow all uppercase names
Hidden files
○ Do not show hidden or system files
○ Do not show hidden files
● Show all files
Visual Settings

8. Find and delete the [DRVDATA.BIN] (or [Drvdata.bin]) and [DRVIDX.BIN] (or [Drvidx.bin]) files.
9. In the [INF] or [Inf] folder, double-click the [OTHER] or [Other] folder to open it.

10. Find and delete the [Canon.IncCAP xxx.Inf] file (The xxx represents numerals.).

Canon.IncCAP
_xxxx

You do not need to delete anything if none of the above files are contained in the [OTHER] folder.

The [INF] folder contains numerous files critical to the computer’s operation. Be extremely careful to delete the correct files. If you delete the wrong files, you may be unable to restart Windows.

Reinstall the driver

11. Reinstall the driver with the procedures in *Installing the Software and USB Driver* (p. 11).

Zooming Images in ZoomBrowser EX is Slow or Not Working

Some graphics cards or settings may cause the display of zoomed images in ZoomBrowser EX to slow down or malfunction. If this occurs, set your computer display's Hardware acceleration setting to a lower setting.

1. Click the Windows [Start] menu, followed by [Control Panel] and [Appearance and Themes].
   With Windows 2000, Windows Me, or Windows 98 SE, click the [Start] menu and select [Settings], followed by [Control Panel].
2. Click the [Display] icon, followed by the [Settings] tab, [Advanced] button and [Troubleshoot] tab.
   With Windows 2000, click the [Display] icon, followed by the [Settings] tab, [Advanced] button and [Troubleshoot] tab.
   With Windows Me or Windows 98 SE, click the [Display] icon, followed by the [Settings] tab, [Advanced] button and [Performance] tab.
3. Set the [Hardware acceleration] to a setting below [Full] and click [OK].
4. Restart the computer if prompted.

If You Were Using ZoomBrowser EX Version 2 or 3

Take the following steps if you were using ZoomBrowser EX version 2 or 3 with Windows.

If Titles and Comments Were Attached to Your Images.

Take the following steps to display in version 5 the titles and comments you input in version 2/3.

1. Use Windows Explorer to open the [Program] folder within the folder in which you installed ZoomBrowser EX 5.
   (e.g. C:\Program Files\Canon\ZoomBrowser EX\Program)
2. Double-click [dbconverter.exe] found in this folder to start this utility.
3. Select the database file you were using up to this point and click the [Start] button.
   (e.g. C:\Program Files\Canon\ZoomBrowser EX\Database\My Database.zbd)

   This will display the titles and comments input in the earlier versions in the comments section of ZoomBrowser EX 5.

If You Had Images in a Folder Below the Program Files Folder

Image files in the [Program Files] folder or a subfolder cannot be displayed in ZoomBrowser EX 5 from that location. To display these files, first perform steps 1–3 above and then carry on with Step 4.

4. Use Windows Explorer to copy the folder and the images it contains from the [Program Files] folder to another folder.
   (e.g. Copy the image folders in C:\Program Files\Canon\ZoomBrowser EX\Library One to another location.)

   The moved folder images can now be selected and displayed with ZoomBrowser EX 5.

Information about Your Camera

The software package and the procedures for connecting to a computer and preparing for data transfers vary between camera models. Certain software functions may also not be supported by some camera models.

Non-Supported Programs and Features

Applicable Camera Models

DIGITAL IXUS i zoom
DIGITAL IXUS 750
PowerShot A410

Non-Supported Functions

- **The camera does not record RAW images.**
- **The camera does not support the Display AF Frame function in the View Window.**
- **The camera shutter cannot be controlled from a computer.**
- **The camera does not support the Sound Recorder function.**

Index

A

ArcSoft PhotoStudio 82

B

Browser Area
  Macintosh 60, 61
  Windows 27, 28
Browser Window 60

C

Camera Control Window
  Macintosh 52, 54
  Windows 16, 19
Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk 9
  Macintosh 50
  Windows 11
Comment
  Macintosh 65
  Windows 32
Computer 8
Connecting to a computer 10
  Macintosh 52
  Windows 14, 16
Control Panel 60, 63, 66

D

DIGITAL IXUS 750 98
DIGITAL IXUS i zoom 98
Direct Transfer Function 18, 53
Display Control Panel
  Macintosh 60, 63
  Windows 27, 30
Display Mode
  Macintosh 60, 62
  Windows 27, 29
Downloading Images
  Macintosh 52
  Windows 16

E

Easy-PhotoPrint 21
E-mail 7
Events Dialog 17, 90
Extract Stills from Movies 7

F

Favorite Folder
  Macintosh 61
  Windows 28
File Information Window 65
Folders Area 27, 28
Function Buttons 27, 30

I

Image Icon Attribute
  Macintosh 61
  Windows 28
ImageBrowser 6, 7, 9
Index Print
  Windows 21
Index Printing
  Macintosh 58
Information about Your Camera 98
Installer Panel
  Macintosh 50
  Windows 12
Installing Software
  Macintosh 50
  USB Driver 11
  Windows 11

K

Keyword
  Macintosh 65
  Windows 32

L

Layout Print
  Macintosh 57
  Windows 23

M

Main Window 27
Memory Card Folder Structure 87
Memory Card Reader
  Macintosh 54
  Windows 19
Merging Panoramic Images
  Macintosh 76
  Windows 44
Method for Downloading to a Computer without Additional Software 88
My Camera Maker 48
My Camera Settings
  Macintosh 77
  Windows 45

O

One Photo per Page Print
  Macintosh 56
  Windows 21
Operating the Shutter Remotely 7
  Macintosh 73
  Windows 41

P

PhotoRecord 6
PhotoStitch 6
  Macintosh 76
  Windows 44
PhotoStudio 82
PowerShot A410 98
Print Layout Settings
  Macintosh 59
Print/Share button 18, 53
Printing Images
  Macintosh 56
  Windows 21
Printing with the date
  Macintosh 59
  Windows 24
Programs and Compatible Operating Systems 9
Properties Window 32
PTP (Picture Transfer Protocol)
  Windows 88

Q

QuickTime
  Windows 36

R

Remote Shooting
  Macintosh 73
  Windows 41
Replaying Movies
  Macintosh 69
  Windows 36

S

Scanners and Cameras Wizard 88
Searching Images
  Macintosh 67
  Windows 33
Shooting Information
  Macintosh 65
  Windows 32
Star Rating
  Macintosh 63, 64, 65
  Windows 30, 31, 32
Stitch Assist Mode
  Macintosh 76
  Windows 44
System Requirements 8

T

Task Area 27, 28, 33
Troubleshooting 89
  Start by Checking This 89

U

Uninstalling Software
  Macintosh 86
  Windows 84
USB Driver
  Uninstalling 85
USB Driver (TWAIN/WIA Driver) 9, 13

V

Viewer Window
  Macintosh 64, 69
  Windows 31

W

Windows Explorer 88

Z

ZoomBrowser EX 7, 9
  Version 2/3 97

Canon Customer Support

For Canon Customer Support contacts, please see the European Warranty System (EWS) Booklet supplied with your camera.

ArcSoft Customer Support

North America

46601 Fremont Blvd., Fremont, CA 94538
Tel: (510) 440-9901 (Mon. – Fri., 8:30 AM – 5:30 PM PST)
E-mail: support@arcsoft.com

Other Regions

Please see the ArcSoft web site: http://www.arcsoft.com/maininternational.html.

© 2005 CANON INC.